

# LINCOLN **NAVIGATOR** Owner's Manual 2023





The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2022

All rights reserved.

Part Number: -202207-20220818190032

## California Proposition 65



**WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.  
**Wash your hands after handling.**





# Table of Contents

## Contacting Us

Contacting Us .....	17
---------------------	----

## Introduction

About This Publication .....	19
Using This Publication .....	20

## Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used on Your Vehicle .....	21
------------------------------------	----

## Data Privacy

Data Privacy .....	24
Service Data .....	25
Event Data .....	26
Settings Data .....	26
Connected Vehicle Data .....	27
Mobile Device Data .....	27
Emergency Call System Data .....	28

## Visual Search

Steering Wheel .....	29
Instrument Panel .....	31
Vehicle Interior .....	33

Front Exterior .....	35
Rear Exterior .....	37

## Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions .....	39
Child Restraint Anchor Points .....	40
Child Restraints .....	41
Installing Child Restraints .....	44
Booster Seats .....	48
Child Safety Locks .....	51

## Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions .....	52
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts .....	53
Sensitive Locking Mode .....	54
Automatic Locking Mode .....	54
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy .....	55
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height .....	56
Seatbelt Reminder .....	56
Checking the Seatbelts .....	58
Seatbelt Extensions .....	58

## Personal Safety System™

What Is the Personal Safety System .....	60
How Does the Personal Safety System Work .....	60
Personal Safety System Components .....	60

## Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work .....	61
How Do the Side Airbags Work .....	61
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work .....	62
Airbag Precautions .....	63
Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front Passenger Seats .....	64
Children and Airbags .....	65
Front Passenger Sensing System .....	65
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator .....	68
Disposing of Airbags .....	69

## 911 Assist

What Is 911 Assist .....	70
How Does 911 Assist Work .....	70
Emergency Call Requirements .....	70

# Table of Contents

Emergency Call Limitations .....	71
----------------------------------	----

## Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations .....	72
Using the Remote Control .....	72
Removing the Key Blade .....	73
Sounding the Panic Alarm .....	73
Locating Your Vehicle .....	73
Changing the Remote Control Battery .....	73
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	75
Programming the Remote Control .....	75
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting .....	77

## Phone as a Key

What Is Phone as a Key .....	78
Phone as a Key Limitations .....	78
Programming Your Phone .....	78
Using the Valet Mode .....	79
Using the Backup Start Passcode .....	79
Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting .....	80

## MyKey™

What Is MyKey .....	82
MyKey Settings .....	82
Creating a MyKey .....	83
Programming a MyKey .....	84
Clearing All MyKeys .....	84
Checking MyKey System Status .....	84
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems .....	84
MyKey – Troubleshooting .....	85

## Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle .....	87
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle .....	87
Autounlock .....	88
Autolock .....	88
Mislock .....	88
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings .....	89
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting .....	89

## Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry .....	91
Keyless Entry Limitations .....	91
Keyless Entry Settings .....	91
Using Keyless Entry .....	91
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting .....	92

## Keyless Entry Keypad

What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad .....	93
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations .....	93
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad .....	93
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code .....	93
Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes .....	94
Using the Keyless Entry Keypad .....	95
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting .....	96

## Easy Entry and Exit

How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work .....	97
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off .....	97

# Table of Contents

## Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions .....	98
Opening the Liftgate .....	98
Setting the Liftgate Opening Height .....	100
Closing the Liftgate .....	100
Stopping the Liftgate Movement .....	103
Liftgate Obstacle Detection .....	103
Opening and Closing the Liftgate Window .....	103
Liftgate – Troubleshooting .....	104

## Security

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	106
Anti-Theft Alarm System .....	106
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings .....	107
Security – Troubleshooting .....	108

## Power Running Boards

Power Running Board Precautions .....	110
Power Running Board Settings .....	110
Deploying and Stowing the Power Running Boards .....	111

Power Running Boards – Troubleshooting .....	111
--	-----

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	112
Resetting the Stopping Position .....	112
Horn .....	112
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off .....	112

## Adjustable Pedals

Adjusting the Pedals .....	113
----------------------------	-----

## Wipers and Washers

Wipers .....	114
Autowipers .....	114
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off .....	115
Reverse Wipe .....	115
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	116
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades .....	116
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades .....	117
Washers .....	117

Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting .....	119
--	-----

## Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control .....	120
Headlamps .....	120
Headlamps – Troubleshooting .....	121
Autolamps .....	121
Exterior Lamps .....	122
Automatic High Beam Control .....	124
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting .....	127
Glare Free Lighting .....	127
Glare Free Lighting – Troubleshooting .....	130
Adaptive Front Lighting .....	130

## Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off .....	132
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off .....	132
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off .....	132

# Table of Contents

Interior Lamp Function .....	133
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting	
Brightness .....	133
Ambient Lighting .....	133
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting .....	133

## Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows .....	134
Global Opening .....	134
Window Bounce-Back .....	135
Locking the Rear Window Controls .....	135

## Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions .....	136
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror .....	136
Childminder Mirror .....	136

## Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors .....	138
Folding the Exterior Mirrors .....	138
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror .....	139

## Moonroof

Opening and Closing the Sunshade .....	140
Opening and Closing the Moonroof .....	140
Venting the Moonroof .....	141
Moonroof Bounce-Back .....	141

## Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview .....	142
Tachometer .....	143
Speedometer .....	143
Fuel Gauge .....	143
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge .....	144
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge .....	144
Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge .....	144
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps .....	144
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps .....	144
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators .....	146
Instrument Cluster Indicators .....	146

## Instrument Cluster Display

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls .....	148
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu .....	148
Trip Computer .....	149
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display .....	150

## Personalized Settings

Changing the Language .....	151
Changing the Measurement Unit .....	151
Changing the Temperature Unit .....	151
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit .....	151

## Head Up Display

What Is the Head Up Display .....	152
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off .....	152
Head Up Display Settings .....	152
Head Up Display Indicators .....	154
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting .....	155

# Table of Contents

---

## Remote Start

What Is Remote Start .....	156
Remote Start Precautions .....	156
Remote Start Limitations .....	156
Enabling Remote Start .....	156
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle .....	156
Extending the Remote Start Duration .....	157
Remote Start Remote Control Indicators .....	157
Remote Start Settings .....	157

## Climate Control

Identifying the Climate Control Unit .....	159
Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	159
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	159
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	159
Switching Defrost On and Off .....	159
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	159

Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	160
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off .....	160
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	160
Setting the Temperature .....	160
Directing the Flow of Air .....	160
Auto Mode .....	161
Climate Control Hints .....	162

## Rear Passenger Climate Control

Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit .....	164
Switching the Rear Passenger Climate Controls On and Off .....	164
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	164
Setting the Temperature .....	165
Directing the Flow of Air .....	165
Rear Auto Mode .....	165
Rear Passenger Climate Control Indicators .....	165

## Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter .....	166
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter .....	166

## Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions .....	167
Sitting in the Correct Position .....	167
Power Seats .....	168
Massage Seats .....	172
Heated Seats .....	173
Ventilated Seats .....	174

## Rear Seats

Manual Seats .....	175
Power Seats .....	179
Massage Seats .....	182
Heated Seats .....	182
Ventilated Seats .....	183

## Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....	184
--	-----

# Table of Contents

---

How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work .....	184
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....	184
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....	184
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off .....	185
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators .....	185
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings .....	185

## Memory Function

What Is the Memory Function .....	186
Memory Function Precautions .....	186
Locating the Memory Function Buttons .....	186
Saving a Preset Position .....	186
Recalling a Preset Position .....	186

## Garage Door Opener

Garage Door Opener Introduction .....	188
Garage Door Opener Precautions and Frequencies .....	188

Programming the Garage Door Opener .....	189
Garage Door Opener Additional Assistance .....	192

## USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports .....	193
Playing Media Using the USB Port .....	193
Charging a Device .....	194

## Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet .....	195
Power Outlet Precautions .....	195
Locating the Power Outlets .....	195

## Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 110V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet .....	196
Power Outlet Precautions .....	196
Power Outlet Limitations .....	196
Locating the Power Outlets .....	196
Power Outlet Indicators .....	197

## Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	198
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions .....	198
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	198
Charging a Wireless Device .....	198

## Storage

Overhead Storage .....	200
Glove Compartment .....	200
Center Console .....	200

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions .....	201
Push Button Ignition Switch .....	201
Starting the Engine .....	202
Engine Block Heater .....	203
Stopping the Engine .....	204
Automatic Engine Stop .....	204

# Table of Contents

Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position .....	205
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting .....	206

## Auto-Start-Stop

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	208
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	208
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	208
Stopping the Engine .....	208
Restarting the Engine .....	208
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	208
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	209

## Fuel and Refueling

Fuel and Refueling Precautions .....	211
Fuel Quality .....	212
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel .....	212
Running Out of Fuel .....	213
Refueling .....	214
Fuel Tank Capacity .....	216
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting .....	217

## Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter .....	218
Catalytic Converter Precautions .....	218
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting .....	219

## Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions .....	220
Automatic Transmission Positions .....	220
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear .....	221
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators .....	221
Manually Shifting Gears .....	221
Temporary Neutral Mode .....	222
Automatic Return to Park (P) .....	223
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings .....	223

## Four-Wheel Drive

How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work .....	224
Four-Wheel Drive Precautions .....	224
Four-Wheel Drive Limitations .....	225
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode .....	226

Four-Wheel Drive Modes .....	226
Four-Wheel Drive Indicators .....	227
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting .....	227

## Electronic Limited-Slip Differential

What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential .....	230
Electronic Limited-Slip Differential – Troubleshooting .....	231

## Brakes

Brake Precautions .....	232
Anti-Lock Braking System .....	232
Brake Over Accelerator .....	232
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir .....	232
Checking the Brake Fluid .....	232
Brake Fluid Specification .....	233
Brakes – Troubleshooting .....	233

## Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake .....	235
Applying the Electric Parking Brake .....	235

# Table of Contents

---

Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency .....	235
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	235
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	236
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning .....	236
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge .....	236
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....	236

## Reverse Braking Assist

What Is Reverse Braking Assist .....	238
How Does Reverse Braking Assist Work .....	238
Reverse Braking Assist Precautions .....	238
Switching Reverse Braking Assist On and Off .....	239
Overriding Reverse Braking Assist .....	239
Reverse Braking Assist Indicators .....	239
Reverse Braking Assist – Troubleshooting .....	240

## Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist .....	242
How Does Hill Start Assist Work .....	242
Hill Start Assist Precautions .....	242
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting .....	242

## Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work .....	243
Switching Auto Hold On and Off .....	243
Using Auto Hold .....	243
Auto Hold Indicators .....	244

## Traction Control

What Is Traction Control .....	245
How Does Traction Control Work .....	245
Switching Traction Control On and Off .....	245
Traction Control Indicator .....	245
Traction Control – Troubleshooting .....	246

## Stability Control

How Does Stability Control Work .....	247
---------------------------------------	-----

Switching Stability Control On and Off .....	248
Stability Control Indicator .....	249

## Hill Descent Control

What Is Hill Descent Control .....	250
How Does Hill Descent Control Work .....	250
Hill Descent Control Precautions .....	250
Switching Hill Descent Control On and Off .....	250
Setting the Hill Descent Speed .....	251
Hill Descent Control Indicator .....	251
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting .....	251

## Steering

Electric Power Steering .....	252
Steering – Troubleshooting .....	252

## Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions .....	255
Switching Parking Aid On and Off .....	256
Rear Parking Aid .....	256



# Table of Contents

Front Parking Aid .....	257
Side Parking Aid .....	258
Parking Aid Indicators .....	259
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting .....	259

## 360 Degree Camera

What Is the 360 Degree Camera .....	261
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work .....	261
360 Degree Camera Precautions .....	261
360 Degree Camera Limitations .....	262
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras .....	262
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines .....	262
360 Degree Camera Settings .....	263

## Active Park Assist

What Is Active Park Assist .....	265
How Does Active Park Assist Work .....	265
Active Park Assist Precautions .....	265
Switching Active Park Assist On and Off .....	265
Entering a Parallel Parking Space .....	266
Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space .....	266

Exiting a Parking Space .....	267
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting .....	267

## Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work .....	270
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions .....	270
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations .....	271
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off .....	273
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation .....	274
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed .....	274
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap .....	275
Canceling the Set Speed .....	276
Resuming the Set Speed .....	276
Overriding the Set Speed .....	278
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators .....	278
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control .....	278
Lane Centering .....	279
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control .....	282

Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting .....	284
---	-----

## ActiveGlide™

What Is ActiveGlide™ .....	286
How Does ActiveGlide™ Work .....	286
ActiveGlide™ Precautions .....	287
ActiveGlide™ Requirements .....	288
ActiveGlide™ Limitations .....	288
ActiveGlide™ Settings .....	289
Switching ActiveGlide™ On and Off .....	289
ActiveGlide™ Alerts .....	290
ActiveGlide™ Automatic Cancellation .....	290
ActiveGlide™ Indicators .....	291
ActiveGlide™ – Troubleshooting .....	291

## Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control .....	294
How Does Drive Mode Control Work .....	294
Selecting a Drive Mode .....	295
Drive Modes .....	295
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting .....	298

# Table of Contents

## Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System .....	300
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work .....	300
Lane Keeping System Precautions .....	300
Lane Keeping System Limitations .....	301
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off .....	301
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode .....	301
Alert Mode .....	302
Aid Mode .....	302
Alert and Aid Mode .....	303
Lane Keeping System Indicators .....	303
Blind Spot Assist .....	304
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage .....	306
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting .....	308

## Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System .....	311
---	-----

How Does Blind Spot Information System Work .....	311
Blind Spot Information System Precautions .....	311
Blind Spot Information System Limitations .....	311
Blind Spot Information System Requirements .....	312
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off .....	312
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors .....	312
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage .....	313
Blind Spot Information System Indicators .....	315
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting .....	316

## Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert .....	317
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work .....	317
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions .....	317
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations .....	318

Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off .....	318
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors .....	318
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators .....	319
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting .....	320

## Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist .....	321
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work .....	321
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions .....	321
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations .....	322
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off .....	323
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors .....	324
Distance Indication .....	325
Distance Alert .....	327
Automatic Emergency Braking .....	327
Evasive Steering Assist .....	327
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting .....	328

# Table of Contents

## Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert .....	330
How Does Driver Alert Work .....	330
Driver Alert Precautions .....	330
Driver Alert Limitations .....	331
Switching Driver Alert On and Off .....	331
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting .....	331

## Speed Sign Recognition

What Is Speed Sign Recognition .....	332
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work .....	332
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions .....	332
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations .....	332
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators .....	333
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning .....	333
Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance .....	333
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting .....	334

## Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions .....	336
---------------------------------	-----

Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels .....	337
What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating .....	337
What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating .....	337
What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating .....	337
Calculating Payload .....	338
Calculating the Load Limit .....	338
Roof Rack .....	340

## Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions .....	341
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net .....	341
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor .....	342
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Divider .....	343

## Connecting a Trailer

Connecting a Trailer Precautions .....	345
Hitches .....	345
Connecting a Trailer .....	346

Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting .....	348
--	-----

## Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions .....	349
Trailer Brake Precautions .....	349
Towing a Trailer Limitations .....	350
Loading Your Trailer .....	350
Trailer Towing Hints .....	350
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft .....	351
Towing Weights and Dimensions .....	352
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting .....	354

## Integrated Trailer Brake Controller

What Is the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller .....	356
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Precautions .....	356
Using the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller .....	356
Adjusting the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Mode .....	358

# Table of Contents

Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting .....	359
--	-----

## Trailer Sway Control

How Does Trailer Sway Control Work .....	361
Trailer Sway Control Precautions .....	361
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off .....	361

## Trailer Backup Assistance

What is Trailer Backup Assistance .....	362
How Does Trailer Backup Assistance Work .....	362
Trailer Backup Assistance Precautions .....	362
Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance for a Conventional Trailer .....	363
Switching Trailer Backup Assistance On and Off .....	366
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Controller .....	366
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Views .....	367

Trailer Backup Assistance – Troubleshooting .....	369
--	-----

## Trailer Reverse Guidance

What Is Trailer Reverse Guidance .....	375
How Does Trailer Reverse Guidance Work .....	375
Trailer Reverse Guidance Precautions .....	375
Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for a Conventional Trailer .....	375
Switching Trailer Reverse Guidance On and Off .....	378
Using Trailer Reverse Guidance Views .....	378
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Troubleshooting .....	380

## Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions .....	384
Driving on Snow and Ice .....	384
Breaking-In .....	384
Driving Economically .....	384
Driving in Special Conditions .....	385
Driving Through Shallow Water .....	386

Floor Mats .....	387
------------------	-----

## Crash and Breakdown Information

Roadside Assistance .....	389
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off .....	390
Jump Starting the Vehicle .....	390
Post-Crash Alert System .....	392
Post Impact Braking .....	393
Automatic Crash Shutoff .....	393
Recovery Towing .....	394
Transporting the Vehicle .....	395

## Towing Your Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions .....	397
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - 4x4 .....	397
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - 4x2 .....	399
Emergency Towing .....	399
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....	400

# Table of Contents

## Fuses

Fuse Precautions .....	401
Under Hood Fuse Box .....	401
Body Control Module Fuse Box .....	408
Identifying Fuse Types .....	413
Fuses – Troubleshooting .....	413

## Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions .....	414
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	414
Under Hood Overview .....	415
Engine Oil .....	417
Checking the Coolant .....	418
Engine Air Filter .....	423
Changing the Fuel Filter .....	424
Changing the 12V Battery .....	424
Adjusting the Headlamps .....	427
Exterior Bulbs .....	428
Interior Bulbs .....	428
Drive Belt Routing .....	428

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning Products .....	429
-------------------------	-----

Cleaning the Exterior .....	430
Cleaning the Interior .....	432
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	434
Waxing Your Vehicle .....	434

## Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage .....	435
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage .....	436

## Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label .....	437
Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades .....	437
Information on the Tire Sidewall .....	438
Glossary of Tire Terminology .....	443
Tire Replacement Requirements .....	444
Using Snow Chains .....	446

## Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures .....	449
Inflating the Tires .....	449
Inspecting the Tire for Wear .....	449

Inspecting the Tire for Damage .....	450
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems .....	451
Tire Rotation .....	451

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	453
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview .....	453
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....	454
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....	455
Viewing the Tire Pressures .....	455
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting .....	455

## Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire .....	459
Wheel Nuts .....	465

## Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications .....	467
-----------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

Motorcraft Parts .....	468
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification .....	469
Cooling System Capacity and Specification .....	471
Fuel Tank Capacity .....	473
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification .....	474
Washer Fluid Specification .....	475
Brake Fluid Specification .....	475
Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification .....	477
Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification .....	478
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification .....	479

## Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number .....	480
-------------------------------------	-----

## Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle .....	481
Connected Vehicle Requirements .....	481
Connected Vehicle Limitations .....	481

Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....	481
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....	482
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting .....	482

## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot .....	484
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password .....	484
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting .....	485

## Audio System

Audio System Precautions .....	486
Identifying the Audio Unit .....	486
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off .....	486
Selecting the Audio Source .....	486
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source .....	486
Adjusting the Volume .....	487
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off .....	487
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off .....	487
Setting a Memory Preset .....	487

Muting the Audio .....	487
Adjusting the Sound Settings .....	487
Setting the Clock and Date .....	488
AM/FM Radio .....	488
Switching the Display On and Off .....	489
Digital Radio .....	489
Satellite Radio .....	491
Audio System – Troubleshooting .....	493

## Rear Passenger Audio Controls

Identifying the Rear Passenger Audio Controls .....	497
Switching the Rear Passenger Audio Controls On and Off .....	497
Selecting the Audio Source .....	497
Playing and Pausing the Audio Source .....	497
Adjusting the Volume .....	497
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off .....	497
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off .....	497
Changing the Radio Station .....	497

# Table of Contents

---

## Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions .....	498
Center Display Limitations .....	498
Status Bar .....	498
Feature Bar .....	499
Information On Demand Screen .....	500
Rebooting the Center Display .....	500

## Voice Interaction

Lincoln Personal Assistant .....	501
----------------------------------	-----

## Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In .....	503
Alexa Built-In Requirements .....	503
Signing Into Your Account .....	503
Using Alexa Built-In .....	503
Alexa Built-In Settings .....	503

## Phone

Phone Precautions .....	505
Connecting Your Phone .....	505
Phone Menu .....	505
Making and Receiving a Phone Call .....	507

Sending and Receiving a Text Message .....	509
--	-----

Switching Text Message Notification On and Off .....	510
--	-----

## Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device .....	511
Playing Media Using Bluetooth® .....	511

## Apps

App Precautions .....	512
App Requirements .....	512
Accessing Apps .....	512
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device .....	512
Enabling Apps on an Android Device .....	512
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off .....	513
Switching Android Auto On and Off .....	513

## Personal Profiles

How Do Personal Profiles Work .....	515
Enabling or Disabling Personal Profiles .....	515
Creating a Personal Profile .....	515

Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile to a Remote Control .....	516
---	-----

## Navigation

Connected Navigation .....	517
Accessing Navigation .....	517
Navigation Map Updates .....	517
Adjusting the Map .....	517
Live Traffic .....	517
Setting a Destination .....	518
Waypoints .....	518
Route Guidance .....	519

## Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates .....	520
Software Update Settings .....	520
Software Update Indicators .....	521

## Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset .....	523
---------------------------------	-----

## Accessories

Accessories .....	524
-------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

---

## **Lincoln Protect**

What Is Lincoln Protect .....	526
-------------------------------	-----

## **Scheduled Maintenance**

General Maintenance Information .....	529
Normal Scheduled Maintenance .....	533
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance .....	537

## **Customer Information**

Rollover Warning .....	541
The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program - United States of America .....	541
The Mediation and Arbitration Program - Canada .....	542
Ordering a Canadian French Owner's Manual .....	543
Reporting Safety Defects in the United States .....	543
Reporting Safety Defects in Canada .....	544
Radio Frequency Certification Labels .....	545
Perchlorate .....	590

Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	590
Mobile Communications Equipment .....	591
Federal Highway Administration Regulation .....	591
End User License Agreement .....	591
Emission Law - United States of America .....	621
Export Unique Options .....	622
Warranty Information .....	623

## **Appendices**

Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	625
-------------------------------------	-----



# Contacting Us

---

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship center.

## United States

Lincoln  
Lincoln Concierge  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126  
1-800-521-4140  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone  
service provider)  
[www.owner.lincoln.com](http://www.owner.lincoln.com)

## Lincoln Automotive Financial Services - US Only

Lincoln Automotive Financial Services offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. We are dedicated to providing answers, information and a truly extraordinary experience.

For assistance call 1-888-498-8801, or for more information about Lincoln Automotive Financial Services and access to an account manager, visit [www.lincoln.com/finance](http://www.lincoln.com/finance).

## Canada

Lincoln  
Customer Relationship Centre  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8  
1-800-387-9333  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone  
service provider)  
[www.lincolncanada.com](http://www.lincolncanada.com)

## Australia

Ford Motor Company  
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Mail Bag 5  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Campbellfield, Victoria, 3061  
Telephone: 13 3673 (FORD)  
E-mail: [foacust1@ford.com](mailto:foacust1@ford.com)

## New Zealand

Ford Motor Company  
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Bag 76912  
Manukau City 2241  
Telephone: 0800 367 369 (FORDNZ)  
E-mail: [fnzcust@ford.com](mailto:fnzcust@ford.com)

## China

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: 400-988-6789  
Email: [info12@lincoln.com](mailto:info12@lincoln.com)  
Wechat Account: Lincoln\_in\_China  
Weibo Account: Lincoln China

## Asia Pacific

E-mail: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

# Contacting Us

---

## **Caribbean, Central America and Israel**

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
E-mail: expcac@ford.com

## **U.S. Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico**

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Telephone: (800) 841-3673  
E-mail: prcac@ford.com

## **Chile**

Ford Customer Service  
Telephone: 800-470-408

## **Argentina**

Telephone: 0800-888-3673

## **Brazil**

www.ford.com.br

## **North Africa**

E-mail: nafcrc@ford.com

## **Sub-Saharan Africa**

E-mail: ssacrc@ford.com

## **Puerto Rico**

Ford International Business Development,  
Inc.  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, PR 00922-1957  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
E-mail: prcac@ford.com  
www.ford.com.pr

## **Middle East**

Ford Middle East Customer Relationship  
Center  
P.O. Box 21740  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: 80004441066  
Toll-free number for the Kingdom of Saudi  
Arabia: 8008443673  
Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi  
Arabia: 800850078  
Kuwait: 22280384  
Local telephone number for Kuwait: +965 1  
898900  
Fax: +971 4 3327266  
E-mail: menacac@ford.com  
www.me.ford.com

## **South Korea**

Telephone: +82-02-1600-6003  
E-mail: infokr1@ford.com

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Lincoln. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this digital manual, that we have also made available for your continued use through the Lincoln Way app and your local Lincoln website to familiarize yourself with the basics.

**Note:** To download the *Lincoln Way app*, visit your device's app store.

**Note:** To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

**Note:** Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Our digital resources include a comprehensive digital owner's manual that is dynamically created according to the features on your vehicle by using the vehicle identification number. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 480). The digital owner's manual includes visual

and full text search functions so that you can quickly locate the information you are looking for. It also includes links to a number of how-to videos created to help you understand some of the advanced technologies on your vehicle.

## Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have bought.

## Illustrations

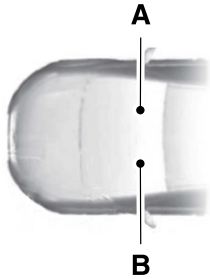
Some of the illustrations in this manual could show features as used in different models, some can appear different to you on your vehicle.

## Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.

# Introduction

---



- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

## USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

# Symbols Glossary

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR VEHICLE

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Airbag



Air conditioning system



Air conditioning system lubricant type



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Blower motor



Brake fluid - non petroleum based



Brake system



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Electric Parking brake



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten seatbelt

































Flammable



Front fog lamps

# Symbols Glossary

	Fuel pump reset		Keep out of reach of children		Passenger airbag activated
	Fuse compartment		Lighting control		Passenger airbag deactivated
	Hazard flashers		Low fuel level		Power steering fluid
	Headlamp high beams		Low tire pressure warning		Power windows front/rear
	Headlamps on		Maintain correct fluid level		Power window lockout
	Heated rear window		Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)		Requires registered technician
	Hill descent control		Note operating instructions		Safety alert
	Horn control		Panic alarm		See Owner's Manual
	Interior luggage compartment release		Parking aid		See Service Manual
	Jack		Parking lamps		Side airbag

# Symbols Glossary

---



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Stability control off



Trail control



Turn Signal



Windshield defrosting system



Windshield wiping system



Windshield wash and wipe

# Data Privacy



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Lincoln website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** Error logs are reset following a service or repair.

**Note:** We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.
- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Lincoln website.



# Data Privacy

---

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Where equipped, SiriusXM with 360L may use the modem. To disable, turn off the SiriusXM with 360L or Vehicle Connectivity setting. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 481).

## SERVICE DATA

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them

vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, for example, your contact information, to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information

may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca), including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries.

# Data Privacy

---

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## ActiveGlide Data (If Equipped)

If ActiveGlide is active in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, the system may record driver attentiveness, based on the direction of eyes and duration, and photographs of the driver seat area.

**Note:** *No data is recorded under normal driving conditions.*

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

# Data Privacy

---

## Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

## Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the

SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.ConnectedLincoln.com](http://www.ConnectedLincoln.com) or refer to your local Lincoln website.

**Note:** *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 481).*

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.ConnectedLincoln.com](http://www.ConnectedLincoln.com).*

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 512).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

# Data Privacy

---

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Data Privacy** (page 24).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Lincoln website.

**Note:** To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.ConnectedLincoln.com](http://www.ConnectedLincoln.com).

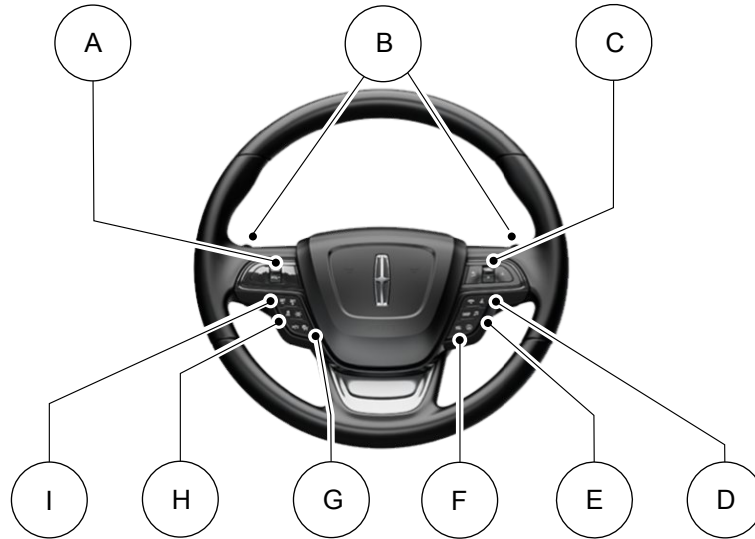
**Note:** You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

# Visual Search

## STEERING WHEEL



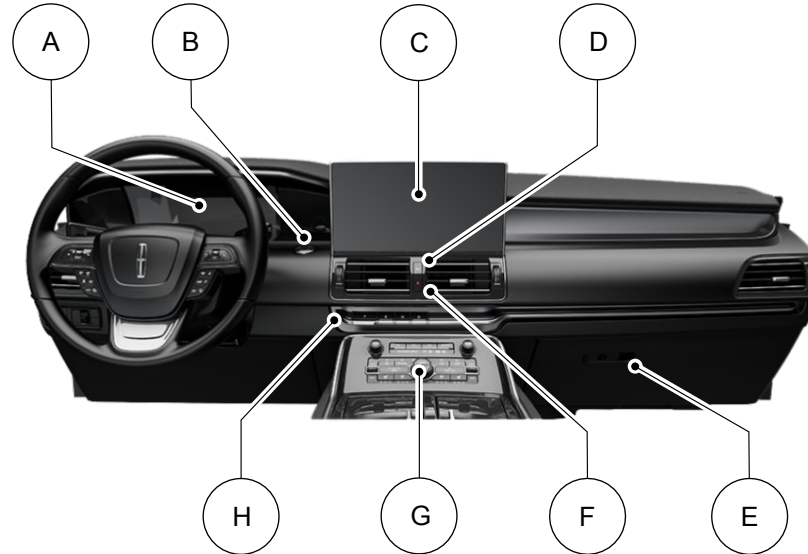
# Visual Search

---

- A See **Adjusting the Volume** (page 487).
- B See **Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters** (page 221).
- C See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 148).
- D See **Using Lincoln Personal Assistant** (page 501).
- E See **Selecting the Audio Source** (page 486).
- F See **Accessing Navigation** (page 517).
- G See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 273).
- H See **Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap** (page 275).
- I See **Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed** (page 274). See **Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed** (page 274).

# Visual Search

## INSTRUMENT PANEL



# Visual Search

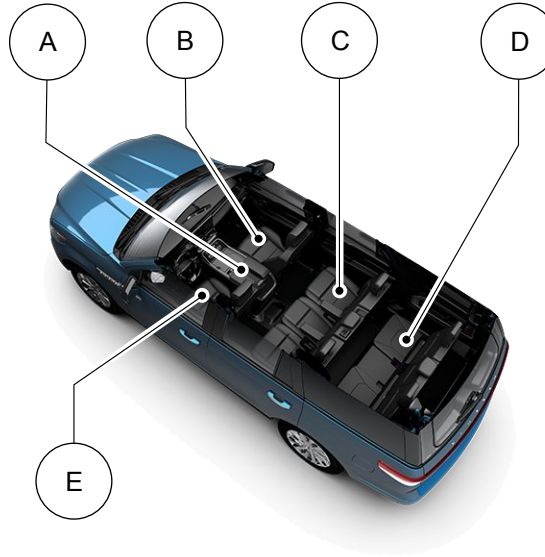
---

- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 142).
- B See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 201).
- C See **Status Bar** (page 498).
- D See **Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off** (page 263).
- E See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 200).
- F See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 390).
- G See **Switching Climate Control On and Off** (page 159).
- H See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 221).



# Visual Search

## VEHICLE INTERIOR



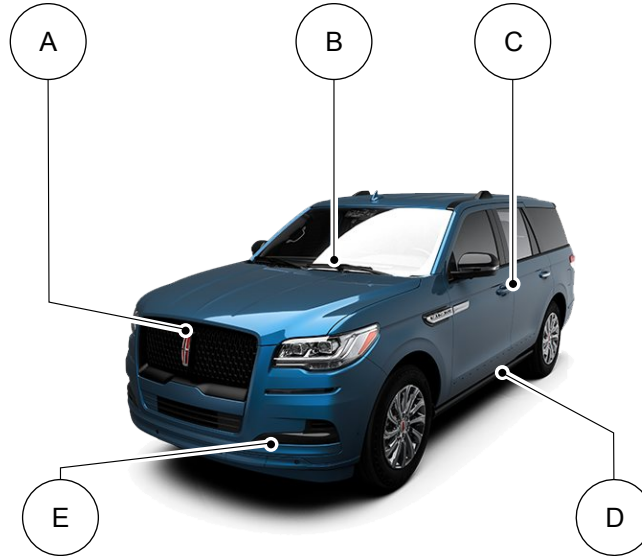
# Visual Search

---

- A See **Opening the Center Console** (page 200).
- B See **Moving the Seat Backward and Forward** (page 170).
- C See **Moving the Seat Backward and Forward** (page 176).
- D See **Accessing the Third Row Seats** (page 178).
- E See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 167).

# Visual Search

## FRONT EXTERIOR



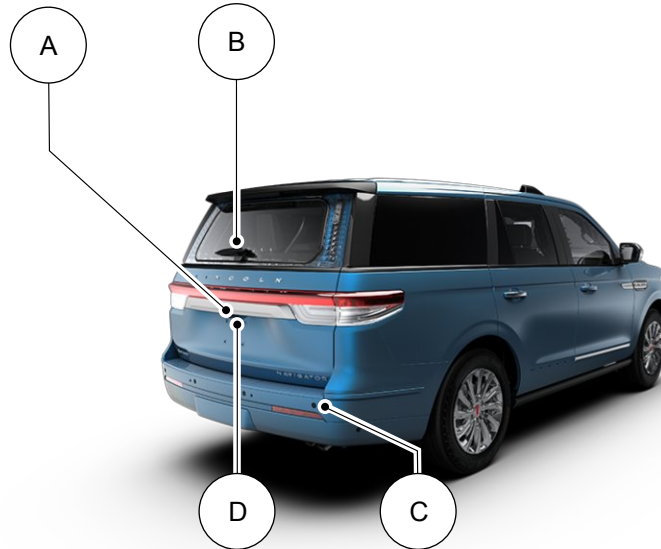
# Visual Search

---

- A See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 262).
- B See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 116).
- C See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 87).
- D See **Deploying and Stowing the Power Running Boards** (page 111).
- E See **Accessing the Front Towing Point** (page 394).

# Visual Search

## REAR EXTERIOR



# Visual Search

---

- A See **Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 98).
- B See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 117).
- C See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 256).
- D See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 262).

# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and

CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to [www.nhtsa.dot.gov](http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov). In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle

# Child Safety

manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure child restraints or booster seats when they are not in use. They could become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When installing a child restraint with seatbelts:

- Place the vehicle seat in the upright position before you install the child restraint.
- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.

- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the child restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

### WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

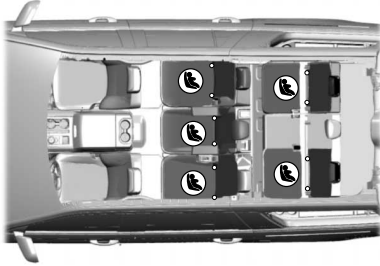
Anchor points allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS

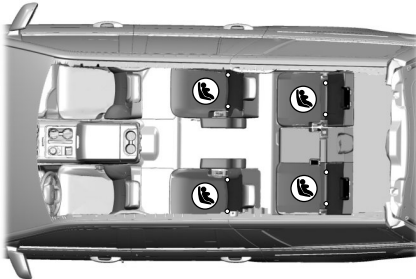
Second Row Bench Seat



# Child Safety

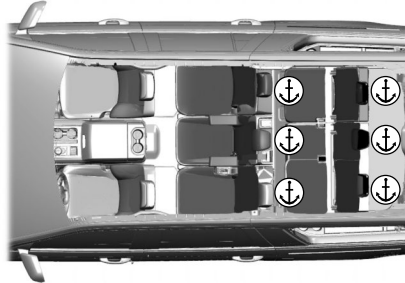


Second Row Bucket Seats

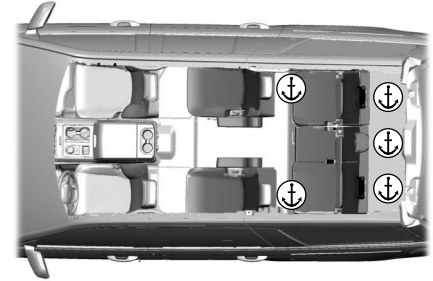


## LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS

Second Row Bench Seat



Second Row Bucket Seats



## CHILD RESTRAINTS

### CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Install the child restraint tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

# Child Safety

## Rear Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)	Seatbelt Only
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	X	X
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		X

## Forward Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor	Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	X	X	X
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		X	X

# Child Safety

## CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Child Size, Height, Weight, or Age	Recommended Restraint Type
Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 57 in (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat backrest upright.

You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.

When possible, properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

When installing a rear facing child restraint, adjust the vehicle seats to avoid interference between the child restraint and the vehicle seat in front of the child restraint.

# Child Safety

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### USING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

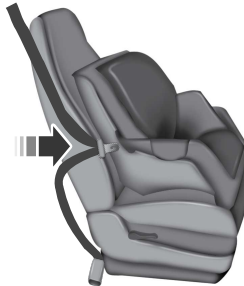
**Note:** Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child restraint.

Perform the following steps when installing a child restraint with seatbelts.

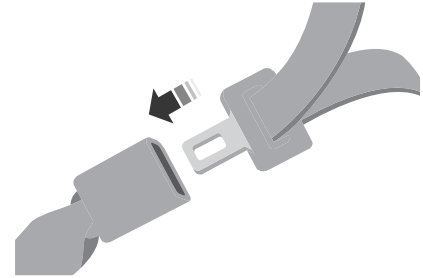
1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a seatbelt.



2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure you did not twist the belt webbing.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for that seating position until the latch engages. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

# Child Safety



5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull all of the seatbelt out.

**Note:** *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.*

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The seatbelt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

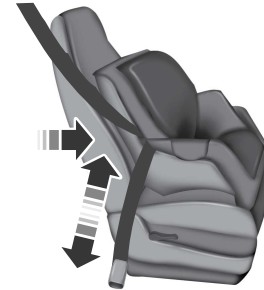
7. Pull the seatbelt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight

of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle helps to remove remaining slack from the belt.

9. If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place.

# Child Safety

To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

## USING LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHERS FOR CHILDREN



**WARNING:** Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH) system has three vehicle anchor points:

- Two lower anchors where the vehicle seat backrest and seat cushion meet, called the seat bight.
- One top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments. These attachments connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint.

However, you can still use the seatbelt to attach the child restraint if the lower anchors are not used. For forward-facing child restraints, you must also attach the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.

Follow the instructions later in this chapter on attaching child restraints with tether straps.

# Child Safety

## INSTALLING A CHILD RESTRAINT IN A CENTER SEAT



**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 11 in (280 mm) apart. The lower anchors at the center of the third row rear seat are spaced 19 in (488 mm) apart. The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center.

You cannot install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments at the center seating position. You can only use LATCH compatible child restraints with attachments on belt webbing at this seating position provided that the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if another child restraint is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the child restraint, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than 1 in (2.5 cm).

If you did not properly anchor the child restraint, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

## COMBINING THE SEATBELT AND LOWER ANCHORS FOR ATTACHING CHILD RESTRAINTS

When used in combination, you may attach either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if it is included with the child restraint.

## USING TETHER STRAPS

Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraint and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.

Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

# Child Safety

Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

Once you have installed the child restraint using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

## BOOSTER SEATS

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint and meet the following criteria.

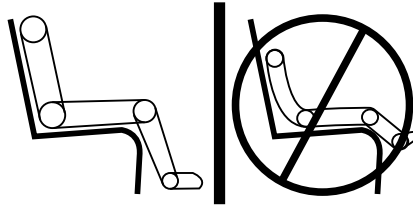
- Generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall.
- Are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12).
- Are between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg).

Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer yes to all of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.





# Child Safety

## Types of Booster Seats



- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield.

If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head, as measured at the tops of the ears, above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high-back booster seat.



- High-back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high-back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder.

The following drawings compare the ideal fit to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

## Child Safety

---



# Child Safety

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not use any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



### Right-Hand Side

Turn it counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.


A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.


### Left-Hand Side


Turn it clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.


# Seatbelts


## SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.


 **WARNING:** Children must always be properly restrained.


 **WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.


 **WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.


 **WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

 **WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly made up of one buckle and one tongue designed to be used as a pair. Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. Never use a single seatbelt for more than one person.

 **WARNING:** Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

 **WARNING:** If your vehicle is involved in a crash, have the seatbelts and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

All seating positions in this vehicle have seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

# Seatbelts

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- A shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, except driver seatbelt.
- Height adjusters at the front outermost seating positions.
- Seatbelt pretensioners at the front outermost and rear outermost seating positions.



A seatbelt warning light and chime.

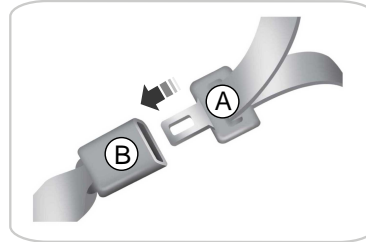


Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. In side crashes and rollovers, the pretensioners will be activated when the Safety Canopy is activated.

## FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

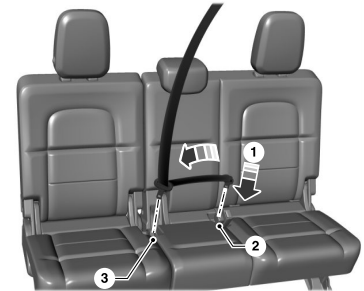
1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

**Note:** It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

## Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.



# Seatbelts

---

The retractor for the third row center seatbelt is in the roof.

To fasten the seatbelt:

1. Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.
2. Insert the smaller tongue into the smaller buckle to the left of the center seat.
3. Pull the larger tongue across the lap and insert it into the buckle to the right of the center seat.

**Note:** *If in constant use, you can leave the belt buckled in the smaller buckle. When it is not in use, or when you fold or move the rear seats, you should release the belt from the smaller buckle. Using the tongue of the adjacent seatbelt, press the red button on the smaller buckle.*

## SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

Sensitive locking mode is a seatbelt retractor feature that allows shoulder belt length adjustment according to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement.

### HOW DOES SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE WORK

If the driver suddenly brakes, turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the seatbelt retractor locks if you pull the seatbelt webbing out too quickly. If the retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract.

If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

For rear seatbelts, recline the rear seat backrest or push the seat backrest cushion away from the seatbelt. Feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

## AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

This feature keeps the seatbelts pre-locked. The belt still retracts to remove any slack in the shoulder belt.

### WHEN TO USE AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

Use this mode any time you install a child restraint in the front passenger seating position or any rear seating position. Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in a rear seat whenever possible.

**Note:** *Automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.*

# Seatbelts

## ENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE



1. Fasten the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.
3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

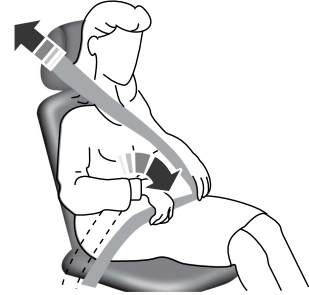
## DISENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive locking mode.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

# Seatbelts

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT

**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.



1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.

2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### HOW DOES THE SEATBELT REMINDER WORK

**WARNING:** The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

This system monitors all seating positions and provides audio and graphic feedback.

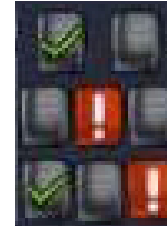
### SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

**WARNING:** This lamp illuminates if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The lamp switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one minute has elapsed.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This lamp illuminates if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Note:** To avoid inadvertent warnings, do not place large objects on the front passenger seat.

**3** This lamp illuminates when you switch the ignition on, identifying the number of seating positions with fastened buckles. It illuminates again when a seating position changes from unfastened to fastened.





# Seatbelts

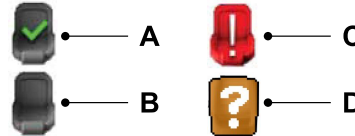
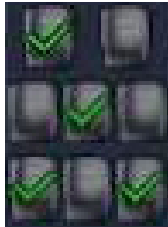
This warning displays if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

**Note:** If a rear seat is unoccupied, or an occupant never fastens the seatbelt buckle to begin with, the warning will not display.

**Note:** Front seating positions appear in this warning display. Warnings for unfastened front seatbelt buckles appear in the initial warning lamp.

## Seatbelt Status

To view the seatbelt status, use the information display controls on the steering wheel.



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

## SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The tone switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one minute elapses.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This warning tone sounds if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

This tone also sounds if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

## SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

**Note:** The driver and front passenger warnings switch off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this cancels the process.

# Seatbelts

Read Steps 1-4 before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Make sure that:

- You set the parking brake.
  - The transmission is in park (P).
  - The ignition is off.
  - You close all vehicle doors.
  - You unfasten the driver and front passenger seatbelts.
1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the engine.
  2. Immediately start the deactivation or reactivation procedure in Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
  3. For the seating position you are switching off or on, fasten then unfasten the seatbelt four times at a moderate speed, ending in the unfastened state. The seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation.

This switches the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.

This switches the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

## CHECKING THE SEATBELTS

Check the seatbelts and child restraints periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.

Check the following seatbelt assemblies after a crash.

- Retractors.
- Buckles.
- Front seatbelt buckle assemblies.
- Shoulder belt height adjusters.
- Shoulder belt guide on seat backrest.
- Child restraint LATCH and tether anchors.
- Attaching hardware.

Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be checked and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Cleaning Seatbelts** (page 434).

## SEATBELT EXTENSIONS



**WARNING:** Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.

# Seatbelts

---



**WARNING:** Only use extensions provided free of charge by our dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.



**WARNING:** Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the way the seatbelt fits across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from our dealers. Only use our seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelt manufacturer with our seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your vehicle restraint system.

## WHAT IS THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM

An advanced safety system that protects occupants in frontal crashes.

## HOW DOES THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM WORK

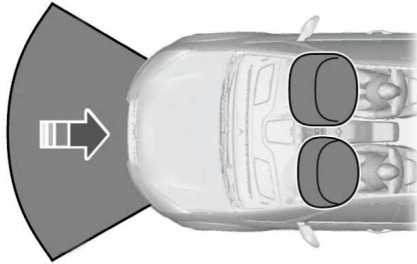
This system provides an improved level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system analyzes occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, and one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

## PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outermost seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicators.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.

# Airbags

## HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The driver and front passenger airbags deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 68).

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

Contact with a deploying airbag may cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag.

Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

## HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

# Airbags



**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.



The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seat backrests.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 68).

## HOW DOES THE SAFETY CANOPY™ WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

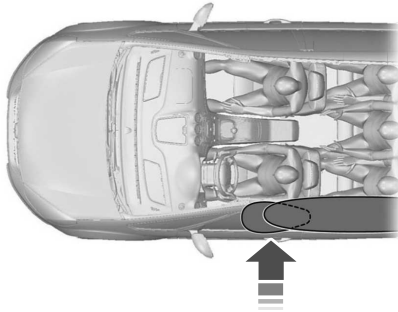


**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the

# Airbags

Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy inflates between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



The system consists of the following:

- Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 68).

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

## AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

# Airbags



**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## PROPERLY ADJUSTING THE DRIVER AND FRONT PASSENGER SEATS



**WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. Properly seated occupants sit upright, lean against the seat backrest, and center themselves on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.



# Airbags

## CHILDREN AND AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

If two adults and a child occupy a vehicle without rear seats, properly restrain the child in the center front seat unless doing so would interfere with driving your vehicle. This provides lap and shoulder belt protection for all occupants, and airbag protection for the adults. A child or infant properly restrained in the center front seat should have a reduced risk to serious injury from the airbags.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

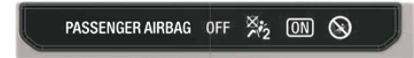
### WHAT IS THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

## HOW DOES THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM WORK

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.

**Note:** When you first switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



The indicator lamps are in the center stack of the instrument panel.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.

# Airbags

---

- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

**Note:** *Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.*

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, you should advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.
- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat

# Airbags

- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 68).

If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.

- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center. See **Contacting Us** (page 17).

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

# Airbags

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM INDICATORS

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front of your vehicle could affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. This includes the hood, bumper system, frame, front body structure, tow hooks, hood pins, push bar and snowplows.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors. These sensors provide information to the restraints control module which activates the following:

- Front seatbelt pretensioners.
- Adaptive steering column.
- Driver airbag.
- Passenger airbag.
- Seat mounted side airbags.
- Safety Canopy.

Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

# Airbags

---



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after you switch the ignition on.

- The readiness light either flashes or stays on.
- You hear a series of five tones. The tone pattern repeats periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, seatbelt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The front airbags activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes. Front airbags may activate in rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts if the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The seatbelt pretensioners activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers.

- The side airbags inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The Safety Canopy inflates in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

## DISPOSING OF AIRBAGS

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

# 911 Assist

## WHAT IS 911 ASSIST

911 Assist is a SYNC system feature that can call for help.

For more information, visit [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

## HOW DOES 911 ASSIST WORK

If a crash deploys an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected **Bluetooth®** enabled phone.

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone. SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides about 10 seconds to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel.

If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator. The occupants in your vehicle are able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

During an emergency call the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service.

## EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



**WARNING:** Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.



**WARNING:** Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

# 911 Assist

---

- SYNC is powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a **Bluetooth®** enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected **Bluetooth®** enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected **Bluetooth®** enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**Note:** *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is off and the phone connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

**Note:** *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

## EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number. The following are limitations of this feature:

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Make sure a valid remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and rear of vehicle.

The system may not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.

**Note:** *The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.*

### Unlock



Press the button to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 87).

### Lock



Press the button to lock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 87).

### Remote Start (If Equipped)



Press the button to remote start. See **Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle** (page 156).

### Liftgate (If Equipped)



Press the button to open or close the liftgate.

### Panic Alarm (If Equipped)



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. See **Sounding the Panic Alarm** (page 73).



# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOVING THE KEY BLADE



Push the release button on your passive key and pull the key blade out.

## SOUNDING THE PANIC ALARM



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

**Note:** *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

## LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



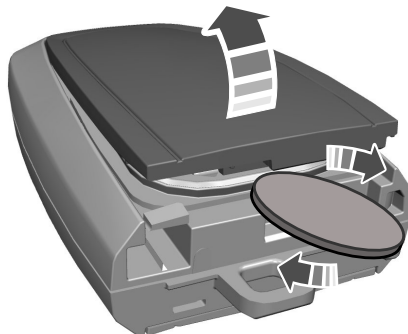
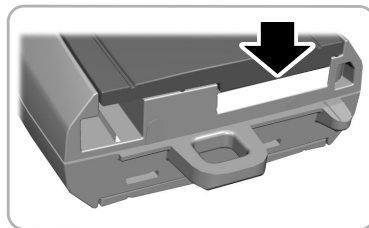
**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

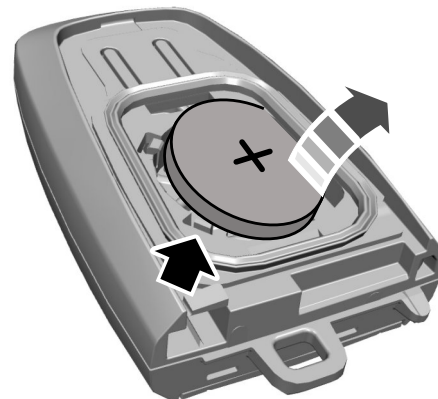
## Keys and Remote Controls



1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a screwdriver, and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.

# Keys and Remote Controls



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.



**Note:** Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

## PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

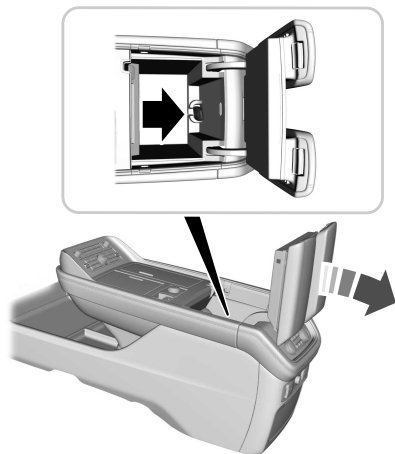
**Note:** You can program a maximum of four remote controls to your vehicle.

**Note:** If your programmed remote controls are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded remote, you need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. Store an extra programmed remote away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconvenience. Contact an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement remotes.

You must have two previously programmed remote controls inside your vehicle and the new unprogrammed remote controls readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare remote control programmed if two previously programmed remotes are not available. Make sure that your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you perform any steps out of sequence.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

## Keys and Remote Controls



1. Place the first programmed remote in the backup slot inside the center console, with your foot off the brake pedal press and release the push button ignition switch.
2. Wait five seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again.
3. Remove the remote control.
4. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed remote control in the backup slot. Press and release the push button ignition switch.
5. Wait five seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Remove the remote control.
7. Place the unprogrammed remote control in the backup slot and press and release the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. With your foot on the brake pedal, press the push button ignition switch to verify the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new remote control.

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 7. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

# Keys and Remote Controls

---

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Replace remote control battery.

# Phone as a Key

## WHAT IS PHONE AS A KEY

### [Phone As A Key: Valet Mode](#)

Phone as a Key allows you to use your phone in place of a passive key.

You can use your phone for the following functions:

- Remote locking and unlocking.
- Passive entry and exit.
- Passive start and drive the vehicle.
- Remote start.
- Memory function recall.

## PHONE AS A KEY LIMITATIONS

Limitations can vary based on the make and model of your phone, phone location and physical obstructions.

The following items could impact Phone as a Key performance or prevent functionality in some cases:

- The typical operating range for Phone as a Key is 131 ft (40 m).

- Your **Bluetooth®** connection is not enabled, is disrupted, or out of range.
- Your Phone as a Key is not active or enabled on at least one phone.
- Your vehicle battery has depleted.
- Your phone battery has depleted.
- Interference from other devices using radio frequencies or physical obstructions.
- Your phone is too close to metal objects or other electronic devices.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and phone and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.

## PROGRAMMING YOUR PHONE

To program your smartphone as phone as a key:

1. Visit your device's app store to download the Lincoln Way app.
2. Create a new account or sign in to an existing account on the Lincoln Way app.

3. Add the vehicle identification number to your account and follow the prompts in the Lincoln Way app to complete the Sync Connect Authorization process.
4. After the authorization is complete, you can set up phone as a key following the prompts in the Lincoln Way app.
5. After phone as a key is set up, you can set up the backup start passcode by following the prompts on your touchscreen.

**Note:** Keep your new backup start passcode with you in case of an emergency.

## Resetting Phone as a Key

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.
4. Press the app connect reset option.
5. Press **Phone as a Key Reset**.
6. Confirm you would like to continue with erasing all phone as a key, keys and backup start passcodes.
7. Press **Continue**.

# Phone as a Key

8. Confirm you are aware you are de-authorizing all authorized users and Lincoln Way Connect settings.
9. Press **Continue**.

## USING THE VALET MODE

### Classic Valet Mode

#### Enabling Valet Mode

Make sure the remote control is in your vehicle.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Valet Mode**.
3. Enter a four digit code to lock the touchscreen.
4. Re-enter the same four digit code to complete enabling valet mode.

#### Disabling Valet Mode

1. Press **Exit Valet Mode**.
2. Enter your four digit code to disable valet mode and unlock your touchscreen.

### Enhanced Valet Mode

#### Enabling Valet Mode

Have your backup start passcode completely set up before using valet mode. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 78).

**Note:** *If your vehicle detects a remote control, the system defaults to classic valet mode.*

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Valet Mode**.

**Note:** *If the system detects a valid phone as a key, a valet passcode displays in both the touchscreen and mobile app.*

**Note:** *If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key, it prompts you to enter your backup start passcode on the touchscreen. Once validated, a valet passcode displays on the touchscreen.*

3. Provide the valet the first five digits of the valet passcode to enter on the keyless entry keypad to unlock your vehicle.

4. Provide the valet the eight-digit valet passcode to enter on the touchscreen to start and drive your vehicle.

#### Disabling Valet Mode

1. Press **Exit Valet Mode**.

**Note:** *If the system detects an authorized phone as a key, valet mode disables.*

**Note:** *If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key, it prompts you to enter your backup start passcode. Once validated, valet mode disables.*

## USING THE BACKUP START PASSCODE

Make sure you have phone as a key active on at least one phone to use the previously created backup start passcode. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 78).

# Phone as a Key

---

1. Press the brake pedal and the push button ignition switch. If the system does not detect a valid phone as a key or remote control, a message appears on the touchscreen and the system prompts you for your backup start passcode.

**Note:** *The touchscreen times out after 30 seconds with no interaction.*

**Note:** *If the backup start passcode screen does not appear, press the brake pedal and push button ignition switch again.*

2. Use the touchscreen to enter your backup start passcode.
3. After entering your backup start passcode, press Enter within 30 seconds.
4. Once the system validates the backup start passcode, a message alerts you to start your vehicle.
5. Press the brake pedal and the push button ignition switch within 20 seconds to start the vehicle.
6. If your vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1-5.

## System Lockout

The system locks after five combined incorrect attempts of the following:

- Entering a backup start passcode.
- Resetting a current passcode.
- Entering a valet mode passcode.

**Note:** *The system remains locked for five minutes. After five minutes the system allows codes to be entered again.*

## PHONE AS A KEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PHONE AS A KEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### How can I tell if my vehicle has phone as a key?

- The touchscreen shows the phone as a key reset option.
- A control button appears on the home screen of the Lincoln Way app if you have registered your vehicle through the Lincoln Way app.

#### What happens if I cannot unlock the vehicle with phone as a key?

- Attempt to move your phone closer to the vehicle.
- Check that the Lincoln Way app is still running and that the phone as a key control screen shows connected. If the phone is connected, attempt to press the remote unlock button in the Lincoln Way app. If the phone is not connected or the remote unlock button does not work in the Lincoln Way app, attempt to force close and restart the app.



# Phone as a Key

---

## Why do I get a No Key Detected message in the instrument cluster display when I am using phone as a key and my phone is in the car?

- Your phone's Bluetooth connection has been disrupted or is not connected. Try reconnecting your phone's Bluetooth connection.
- Move the phone closer to the center of the vehicle near the cup holder or center console.
- Verify your phone as a key is still active, enabled and has not been revoked.

## What do I do if my phone is lost, damaged or the battery has depleted?

- Use the backup start passcode that you created. See **Using the Backup Start Passcode** (page 79).

## How many phones can I use for phone as a key?

- You can program and activate up to four phones with phone as a key to your vehicle.

## How does a valet drive my car if I only use my phone as a key?

- Have the valet use the temporary valet passcode that you created. See **Using the Valet Mode** (page 79).

## I uninstalled my Lincoln Way app and reinstalled it. Why am I not able to get a new phone as a key?

- Remove the phone as a key that was previously associated with your phone.
- Reset phone as a key from your vehicle, and then request a new phone as a key. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 78).

## Why can I not remotely start the vehicle with my phone as a key?

- Using the Lincoln Way app, verify your phone as a key setup is complete and enabled via Bluetooth connection on at least one phone. If Bluetooth has connected but phone as a key setup is not complete, complete the setup of your phone as a key as prompted from the Lincoln Way app. See **Programming Your Phone** (page 78).

## WHAT IS MYKEY

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits.

You can program the restrictions to all keys except one. Any keys that you did not program are administrator keys or admin keys.

**Note:** *Every MyKey receives the same restrictions and settings. You cannot program them individually.*

## MYKEY SETTINGS

### NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

#### Seatbelt Reminder or Belt-Minder™

MyKey mutes the audio system until the front seat passengers buckle the front seat belts.

**Note:** *If your vehicle includes an AM/FM radio or a very basic audio system, the radio may not mute.*

#### Satellite Radio (If Equipped)

Some satellite radio channels have restricted access to adult radio content.

#### Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

#### Driving and Parking Aids

You cannot configure settings for parking aids, blind spot information system, and cross traffic alert. These systems turn on when the vehicle turns on, and you cannot switch them off with a MyKey.

You cannot configure settings for pre-collision assist and lane keeping. These systems turn on when the vehicle turns on.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands when using a MyKey, and with your vehicle moving.

**Note:** *MyKey drivers may be able to switch the lane keeping assist off, but this feature turns back on automatically with every new key cycle.*

## CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 83).

### Speed Limit



**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear on the touchscreen and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

## Speed Minder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear on the touchscreen and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

## Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume reduces. A message appears on the touchscreen if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

## 911 Assist

If you set 911 assist to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

## Do Not Disturb

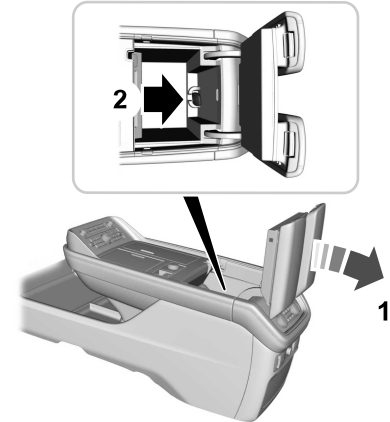
If you set do not disturb to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

**Note:** *If a phone is connected using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto while driving with a MyKey, the driver can receive phone calls and text messages even if the do not disturb restriction is on. And if the vehicle comes with satellite radio, there is no restriction on the adult content.*

## Traction and Stability Control

If you set traction control or stability control to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

## CREATING A MYKEY



1. Raise the center console storage compartment lid.
2. Place the passive key in the backup slot with the buttons facing toward the rear of the vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition on using the key you want to create as MyKey.

4. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
5. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
6. Press **MyKey**.
7. Press **Create MyKey** or **Create MyKey Mobile Device**.
8. Press **Yes**.
9. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You successfully created a MyKey. We recommend that you label this key so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

**Note:** You can use both a passive key and a mobile device as a MyKey. You must have a second passive key and create it as a MyKey.

**Note:** The programmed restrictions apply when you switch the vehicle off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the passive key or mobile device.

## PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can program any remote control to become a restricted MyKey, but you must leave one unmodified as an admin key.

1. Switch the vehicle on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Select and configure the settings.

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the vehicle on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **Clear All MyKeys**.

6. Press **Yes**.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey, and the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

1. Switch the vehicle on.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **MyKey Information**.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with unapproved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for an approved remote start system.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Place Key in Backup Location	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the admin key is not placed in the backup position. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 83).
Key is Already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
This Key restricted at Next Key Cycle. Label Key as MyKey	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

## MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### What is an admin key?

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 83).

### Why am I not able to create a MyKey?

You have not placed the admin key in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 83). The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key. You did not switch the ignition off after creating the last MyKey.

### Why am I not able to program a MyKey?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 83).

### Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 83).

### Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 83). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 84).

### Why am I not able to start the engine with a MyKey?

An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. The system recognizes only the admin key when both are present.

# Doors and Locks

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

#### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

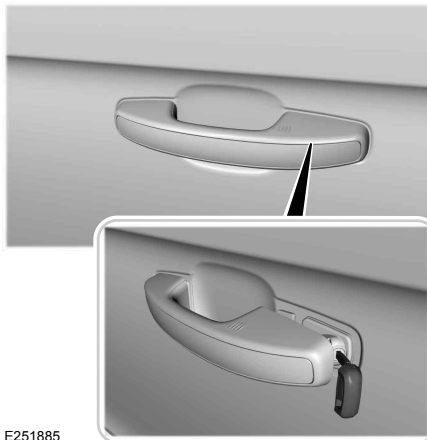
#### Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

## UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

If there is a power door lock fault you can use the key blade to lock and unlock the doors.



E251885

Turn clockwise to lock.

Turn counterclockwise to unlock.

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the front doors.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

**Note:** The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

### OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

# Doors and Locks

---

## AUTOUNLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is an unlocking feature that unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop.

### AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after all of the following occur.

1. All the doors are closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to the accessory position.

**Note:** *If you open the driver door after 10 minutes, Autounlock does not unlock all other doors.*

## SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Switch **Autounlock** on or off.

## AUTOLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that locks your vehicle doors when you start driving.

### AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

## MISLOCK

### WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

### MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the turn signals do not flash if:

- Any door or the tailgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

## SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.



# Doors and Locks

## DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when a door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

#### Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver Door Ajar	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger Door Ajar	
Rear Left Door Ajar	
Rear Right Door Ajar	
Hood Ajar	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

# Doors and Locks

---

## **DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?**

Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

# Keyless Entry

## WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

## KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

### Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Switch the ignition on using an original key that has not been created as a MyKey.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Press **Locks**.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

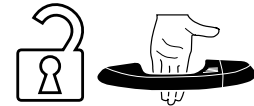
You can enable two-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock only the driver door when you touch the unlock sensor.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

## USING KEYLESS ENTRY

### Unlocking the Doors



With the remote control within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful not to touch the lock sensor at the same time or pull on the door handle too quickly. The system requires a brief delay to authenticate the remote control.

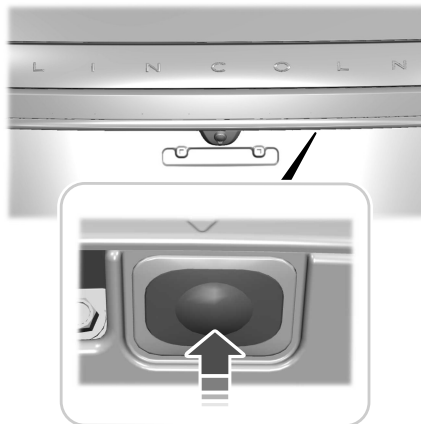
# Keyless Entry

## Locking the Doors



With your passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful not to touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

## Opening the Liftgate with the Remote Control



Press the exterior liftgate release button inside of the liftgate handle. The liftgate unlocks and opens. See **Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 98).

## KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the keyless entry system not function?

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 91). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

#### Why can I not lock my vehicle?

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the tailgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

# Keyless Entry Keypad

## WHAT IS THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

### SecuriCode Invisible Keypad

The keyless entry keypad allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle using the keypad on the window trim.

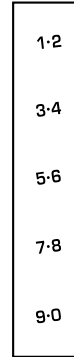
## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD LIMITATIONS

The system may not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.

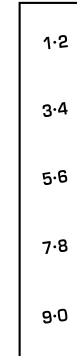
## LOCATING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is near the driver window and illuminates when you touch it.



## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD MASTER ACCESS CODE

### Unlocking the Doors

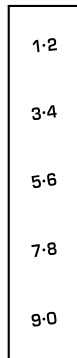


Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other.

- Press 3-4 within five seconds to unlock all doors.

# Keyless Entry Keypad

## Locking the Doors



Press and hold **7-8** and **9-0** at the same time with the driver door closed.

**Note:** *You do not need to enter the code first.*

## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD PERSONAL ACCESS CODES

### Programming a Personal Entry Code

1. Enter the five-digit master code.
2. Press **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal five-digit code. You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.
4. Press **1-2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat Steps 1 through 3, then for Step 4:

- Press **3-4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5-6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7-8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9-0** to save personal code 5.

If your vehicle comes with SYNC, you can also program the system with a personal entry code.

Hints:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The five-digit master code works even if you have set your own personal code.

### Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the five-digit master code.
2. Press and release **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1-2** for two seconds. You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes erase and only the five-digit master code works.

### Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times. This mode turns off the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp flashes.

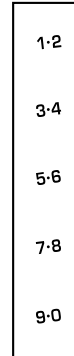
# Keyless Entry Keypad

The anti-scan feature turns off after:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition on.
- You unlock your vehicle using keyless entry.

## USING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

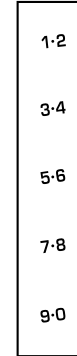
### Unlocking the Doors



Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other.

- Press 3-4 within five seconds to unlock all doors.

### Locking the Doors



Press and hold **7-8** and **9-0** at the same time with the driver door closed.

**Note:** *You do not need to enter the code first.*

# Keyless Entry Keypad

---

## **KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

#### **Why does the keypad not accept the access code?**

If you enter the access code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Slowly re-enter the access code.

#### **Why does the keypad not function?**

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter a wrong code seven times. The anti-scan mode disables the keypad for one minute and the red light flashes.



# Easy Entry and Exit

---

## HOW DOES EASY ENTRY AND EXIT WORK

Easy entry and exit moves the driver seat rearward up to 2 in (5 cm) and the steering column up when you switch the ignition off. The driver seat and steering column return to their previous positions when you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle, the column may move up and in.*

## SWITCHING EASY ENTRY AND EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Easy Entry/Exit**.

If you press any adjustment or memory button when in easy exit mode, the system cancels the operation.

# Liftgate

## LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE

### OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



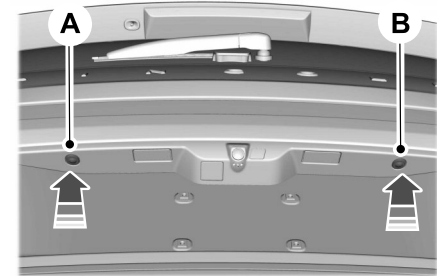
With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



A Glass.

B Door.

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If a remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.
2. Press button B.

# Liftgate

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

## Switching the Power Liftgate On or Off

You can switch the power liftgate on or off through the vehicle settings on your touchscreen.

**Note:** When switched off, the liftgate only unlatches and will not power open or close.

## OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



Press the button twice within three seconds.

**Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

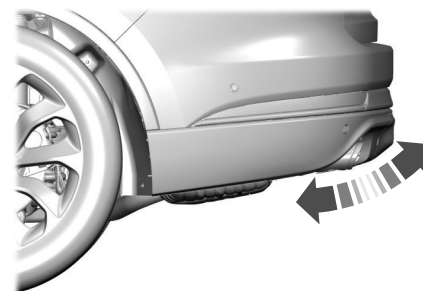
## OPENING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

(If Equipped)

Make sure you have the passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.

2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.



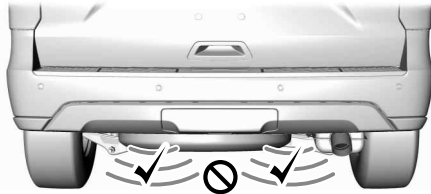
3. The liftgate opens.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

# Liftgate

## Detection Zones



E253799

The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the rear bumper area.

**Note:** Some vehicles may have the ability to detect the kicking motion from under the trailer hitch.

**Note:** Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

**Note:** Any physical actions that mimic a kicking motion such as splashing water, trailer chains or vacuum hoses may cause the hands-free liftgate to activate. Switch the power liftgate off through your vehicle settings or keep the passive key away from the rear bumper detection area.

## SETTING THE LIFTGATE OPENING HEIGHT

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

**Note:** Once the liftgate stops moving, you can manually move it to the desired height.

3. Press and hold the control button on the liftgate until a tone sounds, indicating programming is complete.

**Note:** You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.

**Note:** You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.

4. The power liftgate now opens at the programmed height. To change the programmed height, repeat the steps.

**Note:** You can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position if it opens in a lower position.

**Note:** The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.

## CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

### CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



With the transmission in park (P), press the button on the instrument panel.

# Liftgate

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

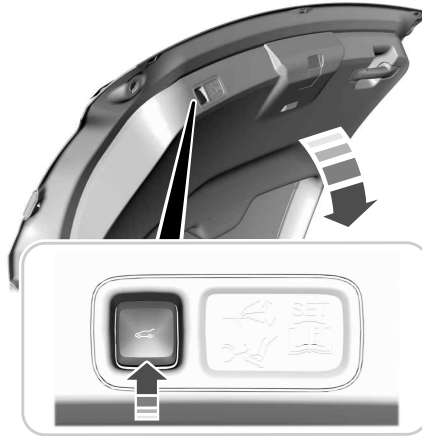
**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

## CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



E252965

Press and release the liftgate button.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Make sure you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

## CLOSING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.



Press the button twice within three seconds.

**Note:** Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving your vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

# Liftgate

**Note:** Make sure the area behind your vehicle is free from obstruction and that there is enough room for you to operate the liftgate. Objects too close to your vehicle, for example a wall, garage door or another vehicle may come into contact with the moving liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

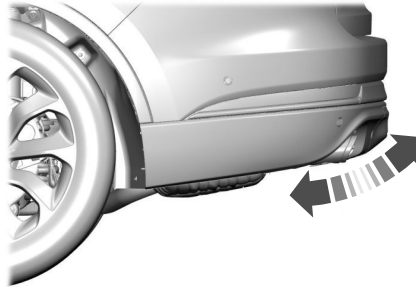
**Note:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

## CLOSING THE HANDS-FREE LIFTGATE

(If Equipped)

Make sure you have the remote control within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.

1. Stand behind your vehicle, and face the liftgate.
2. Move your foot, in a single-kick motion, without pausing, under and away from the rear bumper detection area.

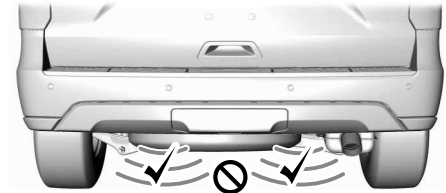


3. The liftgate closes.

Avoid the following actions when using the hands-free opening feature:

- Making physical contact with the bumper.
- Holding your foot under the bumper.
- Sweeping your foot from side to side, or kicking at an odd angle.

## Detection Zones



E253799

The detection area is on the left-hand side and right-hand side of the rear bumper area.

**Note:** Some vehicles may have the ability to detect the kicking motion from under the trailer hitch.

**Note:** Allow the power system to close the liftgate. Manually pushing the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction, replicate a strut failure, or damage mechanical components.

# Liftgate

## STOPPING THE LIFTGATE MOVEMENT

**Note:** Do not apply sudden excessive force to the liftgate while it is in motion. This could damage the power liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Selections will vary depending on region or options.

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button on the liftgate.
- Pressing the liftgate control button inside the vehicle.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on an authorized device.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.

## LIFTGATE OBSTACLE DETECTION

### Closing the Liftgate

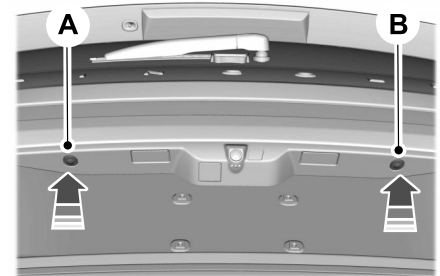
The system stops when it detects an obstacle. A tone sounds and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

**Note:** To prevent accidental obstacle detection, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle.

### Opening the Liftgate

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and a tone sounds. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE LIFTGATE WINDOW



- A Glass.  
B Door.

1. Unlock the liftgate window with the remote control or power door unlock control. If the remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate window unlocks when you press the release button.
2. Press button A and then lift to open.

# Liftgate

3. Carefully push the window down and press firmly to latch securely.
- Note:** Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate window in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the glass.

**Note:** Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

**Note:** Do not leave the liftgate window open while driving. This could damage the liftgate window and its components.

## LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

## LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate Ajar	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.



## **LIFTGATE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why won't my power liftgate function?**

It can happen in freezing conditions or when parking on downhill slopes. Make sure the power liftgate is enabled. Make sure the transmission is in park (P), ensure nothing is obstructing the liftgate path and there is not excessive weight on the liftgate. If there are continued issues, the battery voltage may be low or there may be other system issues. See an authorized dealer.

# Security

---

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.*

### HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch the ignition off.

It disarms when the ignition is switched on with a correctly coded key.

**Note:** *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

**Note:** *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

### HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the tailgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.

- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery backup alarm.
- If someone disconnects the trailer. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 345).

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above, sounds the alarm again.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for five minutes.

## WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

## WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

**Note:** *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

## WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

## ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when your vehicle is switched off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

## DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

### WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, all sensors and perimeter sensing.

#### All Sensors

All sensors is the standard setting.

In all sensors, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *Do not arm the alarm with all sensors if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

#### Perimeter Sensing

In perimeter sensing, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

All the other equipped sensors activate when you arm the alarm in this mode.

## SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Press **Motion Sensors**.
5. Press a setting.

## WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to all sensors.*

## SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Switch **Ask on Exit** on or off.

## SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No Key Detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm Announcement	

## **SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **What should I do if there is any potential alarm problem with my vehicle?**

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### **What should I do if the vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?**

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Power Running Boards

## POWER RUNNING BOARD PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** In extreme climates, excessive ice buildup may occur, causing the running boards not to deploy. Make sure that the running boards have deployed, and have finished moving before attempting to step on them. The running boards will resume normal function once the blockage is cleared.



**WARNING:** Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.

Do not use the running boards, front and rear hinge assemblies, running board motors, or the running board underbody mounts to lift your vehicle when jacking. Use proper jacking points.

The running boards could move slower in cold temperatures.

## POWER RUNNING BOARD SETTINGS

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Power Running Board**.
4. Press a setting.

### **Running Boards (Modes)**

#### **Off**

The power running boards remain stowed, regardless of door position.

#### **Auto**

The power running boards deploy when you approach your vehicle with a remote control, unlock the door or open the door.

The power running boards stow:

- After a few seconds when you close the doors.
- If you unlock the door but do not open it.
- If you have switched **Approach detection** on and do not open a door before the **Auto Timer** setting expires.

**Note:** When you select this mode, an option displays that allows you to select how long the running boards stay deployed without opening the door.

#### **Out**

The power running boards remain deployed, regardless of door position. The power running boards stow when the vehicle speed is more than 3 mph (5 km/h), and the mode changes to **Auto**. You need to select **Out** mode again if you want the power running boards to stay deployed at the end of each trip.

# Power Running Boards

---

## **Approach detection**

When you switch **Approach detection** on with **Auto** switched on, the running boards deploy when you approach your vehicle with a remote control.

## **DEPLOYING AND STOWING THE POWER RUNNING BOARDS**

The power running boards deploy when you approach your vehicle with a remote control, unlock or open the door.

The power running boards stow:

- When the vehicle speed is more than 3 mph (5 km/h).
- After a few seconds when you close the doors.
- Instantly after you close and lock the doors.

- If you unlock the door but do not open it, after the timeout.
- If you have switched **Approach detection** on and do not open a door before the **Auto Timer** setting expires. See **Power Running Board Settings** (page 110).

**Note:** *The power running boards reverse direction and move to the end of travel if they encounter an object when moving. Keep the power running boards and brackets clean for optimum performance.*

## **POWER RUNNING BOARDS – TROUBLESHOOTING**

## **POWER RUNNING BOARDS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why is there unwanted noise coming from my power running boards?**

The power running board mechanism could trap debris such as mud, dirt, snow, ice and salt. If this happens, set the running boards to the deployed position. Then, wash the system, in particular the front and rear hinge arms, with a high-pressure car wash wand.

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 167).



Press the top or bottom of the control to move the steering wheel up or down.

Press the front or rear of the control to move the steering wheel in or out.

You can save and recall the steering wheel position with the memory function. See **Recalling a Preset Position** (page 186).

## RESETTING THE STOPPING POSITION

**Note:** The steering wheel stops when it detects an obstruction. This sets a new stopping position.

To reset the steering column to its normal stopping position:

1. Confirm there is nothing obstructing the motion of the steering column.
2. Press and hold the steering column control until the steering column stops moving.
3. Press the steering column control again.

**Note:** The steering column may start to move again.

4. When the steering column stops, continue holding the control for a few seconds.
5. Repeat for each direction, as necessary.

## HORN



Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the climate control unit.

On some vehicles, an indicator on the button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on.

**Note:** A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.



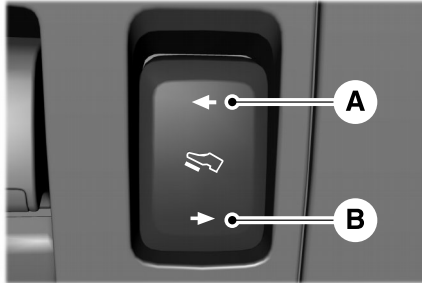
# Adjustable Pedals

## ADJUSTING THE PEDALS



**WARNING:** Do not use the pedal adjustment controls when the vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Your control is on the left-hand side of the steering column or on the instrument panel.



- A. Farther away from you.
- B. Closer to you.

You can save and recall the pedal positions with the memory feature. See **Memory Function** (page 186).

# Wipers and Washers

## WIPERS

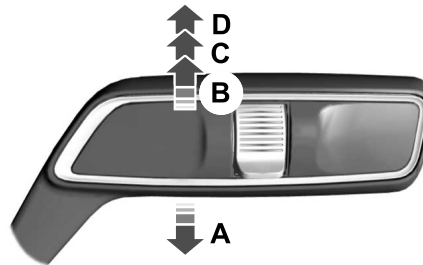
### WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

### SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.



Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

## AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers turns on and controls the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers.

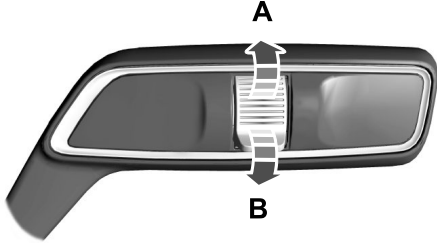
### AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

**Note:** When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. When you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

# Wipers and Washers

## ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



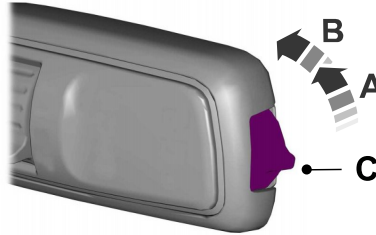
- A High sensitivity.
- B Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

## SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

## REVERSE WIPE

### WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

### REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

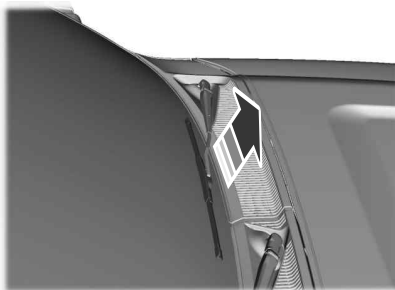
# Wipers and Washers

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



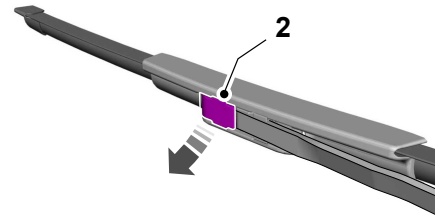
Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

## REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

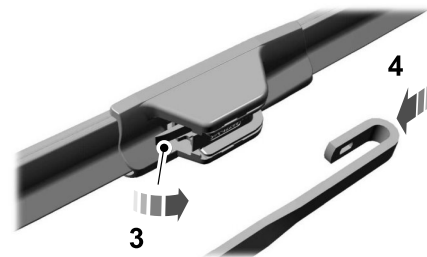


1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Lift the wiper blade primary locking clip.



3. Press the wiper blade secondary locking clip.

# Wipers and Washers

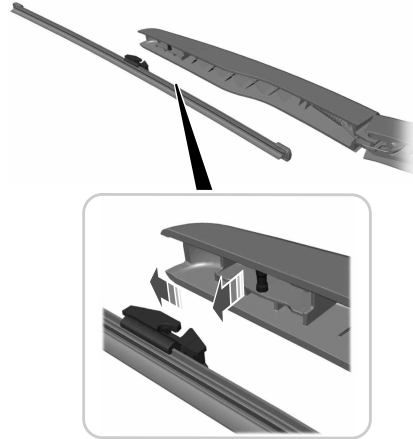
4. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES



1. Lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## WASHERS

### WASHER PRECAUTIONS



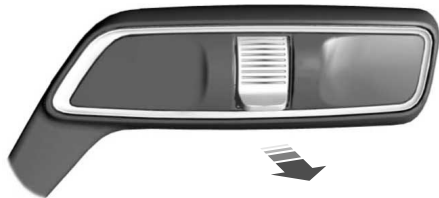
**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 41°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

# Wipers and Washers

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

## USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

**Note:** A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 118).

## SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

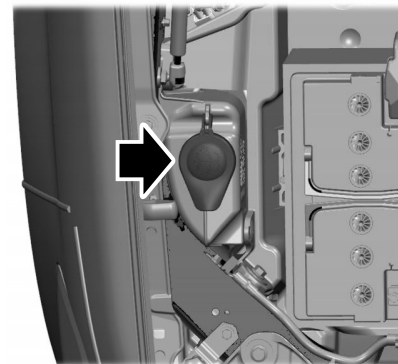
## USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer.

**Note:** A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 118).

## ADDING WASHER FLUID



## WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 475).

# Wipers and Washers

---

## WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

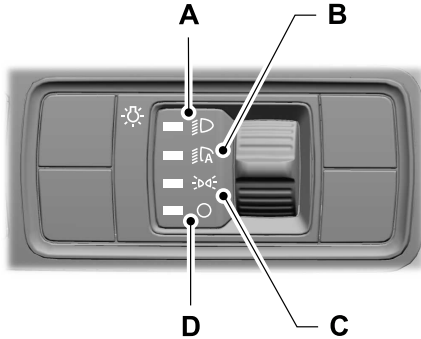
### WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### **Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?**

The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 116). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 116).

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



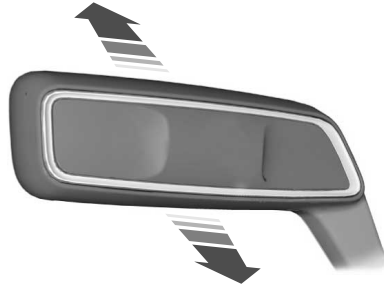
- A Headlamps on.
- B Autolamps on.
- C Parking lamps on.
- D Lamps off.

Press the toggle switch upward or downward to make a selection.

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps each time you switch your vehicle on.

## HEADLAMPS

### USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

## SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

**Note:** The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

## ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

## HEADLAMP INDICATORS

### Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.



# Exterior Lighting

## Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

## HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

#### How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

#### How long may it take for the acceptable condensation to be cleared?

- Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

#### How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

#### What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

#### Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

### AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

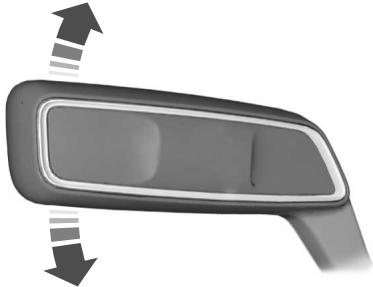
- Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

# Exterior Lighting

2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Autolamp Delay**.
5. Press a setting.

## EXTERIOR LAMPS

### USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

### Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

### SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: CONFIGURABLE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.

3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Daytime Running Lights** on or off.

The daytime running lamps turn on when all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You switch your vehicle on.
- The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or you release the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.
- The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
- The headlamps are off.

**Note:** Other lighting control positions do not turn on the daytime running lamps.

# Exterior Lighting

## SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (DRL)



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

## USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

**Note:** When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

2.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

**Note:** Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

**Note:** The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

## Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

## SWITCHING WELCOME LIGHTING ON AND OFF

Welcome lighting turns on the exterior lamps when you approach your vehicle with an authenticated device or unlock the doors.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Welcome Lighting** on or off.

## EXTERIOR LAMP INDICATORS

### Front Fog Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

### Turn Signal Lamp



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

## EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

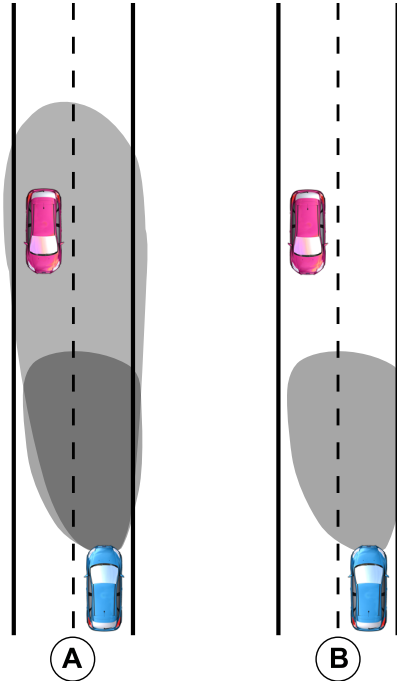
## **AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL**

### **HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK**

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

# Exterior Lighting



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

**WARNING:** The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

**WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 32 mph (52 km/h).

# Exterior Lighting

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto Highbeam** on or off.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

# Exterior Lighting

---

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

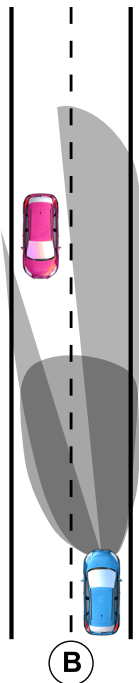
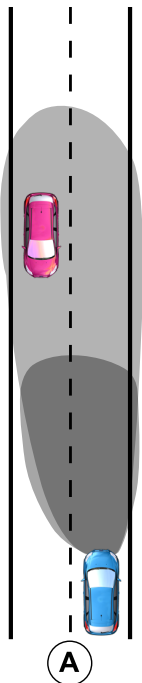
Message	Description
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## GLARE FREE LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

### HOW DOES GLARE FREE LIGHTING WORK


Glare free lighting enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.


# Exterior Lighting





- A Without glare free lighting.  
B With glare free lighting.

## GLARE FREE LIGHTING PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not adapt the light.

 **WARNING:** The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.

 **WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

 **WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

## GLARE FREE LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 32 mph (52 km/h).

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.



# Exterior Lighting

## GLARE FREE LIGHTING LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

**Note:** *The deactivation speed is lower on curves.*

## SWITCHING GLARE FREE LIGHTING ON AND OFF

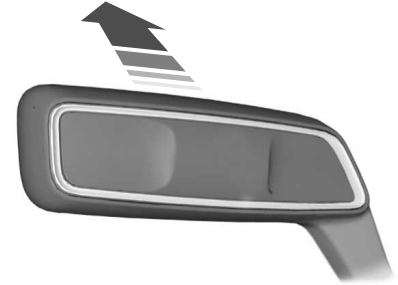
1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Glarefree Lighting** on or off.

## GLARE FREE LIGHTING INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## OVERRIDING GLARE FREE LIGHTING



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch glare free lighting back on.

# Exterior Lighting

## GLARE FREE LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING (IF EQUIPPED)

### GLARE FREE LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

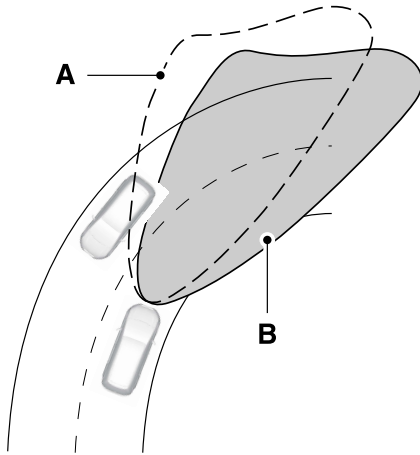
## ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

### HOW DOES ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING WORK

#### Dynamic Bending Lamps

Adaptive front lighting moves the light into the curve when you are steering around a curve or if the camera detects lane markings indicating a curve.

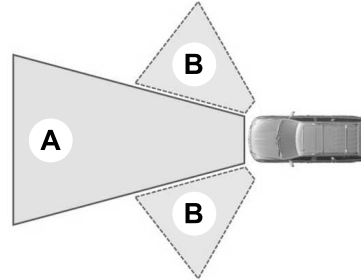
# Exterior Lighting



- A Without adaptive front lighting.
- B With adaptive front lighting.

## Situational Supplemental Lighting

Adaptive front lighting provides supplemental light on the road depending on your vehicle speed, steering wheel input, and camera detection of stop or yield traffic signs.



- A Standard low beam.
- B Supplemental lighting.

**Note:** Other lighting control positions do not turn on adaptive front lighting.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use adaptive front lighting.

# Interior Lighting

## SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a button on the remote control.
- You press the all lamps on button on the overhead console.



Press to switch all interior lamps on or off.

## SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The front interior lamp switches are on the overhead console.

**Note:** *The position of each button on the overhead console depends on your vehicle.*

### Individual Map Lamps



Press to switch the left-hand individual dome lamp on and off.



Press to switch the right-hand individual dome lamp on and off.

## SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The rear interior lamps may be above the rear seat or above the rear windows.



Press to switch the lamps on or off.

**Note:** *If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.*

# Interior Lighting

## INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

### WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

### SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



Press to switch the interior lamp function on and off.

**Note:** *The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off.*

### ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



## AMBIENT LIGHTING

### SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Ambient Light**.
4. Press a color.

### ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

Drag the selected color up or down.

## INTERIOR LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### INTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

**Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?**

The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

# Windows

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

**Note:** *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

### One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.

3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

**Note:** *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

## GLOBAL OPENING (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING (If Equipped)

You can use the remote control to open the windows with the ignition off.

# Windows

## USING GLOBAL OPENING (If Equipped)

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

**Note:** *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

## SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF (If Equipped)

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Windows**.
4. Switch **Remote Open** on or off.

## WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

### OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift and hold the window control switch within two seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

**Note:** *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

**Note:** *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



Press the window control switch to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

# Interior Mirror

## INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

### WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

## AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

**Note:** A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

## CHILDMINDER MIRROR

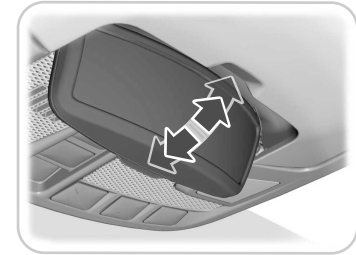
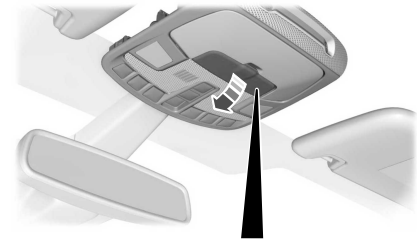
### CHILDMINDER MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the childminder mirror to view rearward traffic, do not allow rear passengers to distract you from the driving task, and make sure the rear view mirror has a clear view of rearward traffic. Failure to do so could increase the risk of a crash from an unseen vehicle, which may result in serious injury.

## LOCATING THE CHILDMINDER MIRROR

The mirror allows the driver to view the rear seating area.





## Interior Mirror

---

Pull down the rear edge of the childminder mirror to open. You can adjust the childminder mirror to any position up to full open to aid in visibility.

# Exterior Mirrors

## ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Right-hand mirror.
- C Adjustment control.

- D Window lock.
- E Power fold.

To adjust the mirrors, switch your vehicle on and place the ignition in accessory or start.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

## FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.



For tight parking conditions, press the control to fold the mirrors.

Press the control switch again to unfold the mirrors.

**Note:** Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.

The left-hand and right-hand mirrors move at different rates. For example, one mirror may stop while the other one continues to move. This is normal.

If you press the control switch to fold the mirrors with auto fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

**Note:** The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

## Switching Auto fold On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on or off.

# Exterior Mirrors

## Loose Mirror

If your power folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. You need to reset them if:

- The mirrors vibrate when you drive.
- The mirrors feel loose.
- The mirrors do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.

To reset the mirrors perform the following steps:

1. Fold or retract both mirrors manually.
2. Using the power folding/power telescoping mirror control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.
3. Operate the power folding or power telescoping mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

## AUTO-DIMMING EXTERIOR MIRROR

### WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING EXTERIOR MIRROR

The driver exterior mirror dims when the interior auto-dimming mirror turns on.

### Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function. See **Exterior Mirrors** (page 138).

### Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 160).

### Signal Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The forward-facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the direction indicator.

## Lincoln Welcome Mat (If Equipped)

Projection lights, on the bottom of the mirror housings, project an image onto the ground a short distance from the vehicle.

### Blind Spot Monitor

See **What Is Blind Spot Information System** (page 311).

### 360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

See **What Is the 360 Degree Camera** (page 261).

## Moonroof (If Equipped)

### OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUNSHADE



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the sun shades. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The controls are on the overhead console.

#### Opening the Sun Shade



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch open feature. To stop movement, press the switch a second time. The sun shade also opens when you open the moonroof.

**Note:** *The sun shade stops short of its fully opened position for the comfort of rear passengers. To fully open the sun shade, press the switch again.*

#### Closing the Sun Shade



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch close feature. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

**Note:** *If fully open, the sun shade stops after covering the rear glass panel. Press and release again to fully close the sun shade.*

**Note:** *The sun shade does not fully close unless the moonroof glass is fully closed.*

### OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof controls are located on the overhead console.

#### Opening the Moonroof



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch open feature. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

**Note:** *The moonroof stops short of the fully opened position to reduce wind noise or rumbling that may happen with the moonroof fully open.*

Press and release the switch again to fully open the moonroof.

## Moonroof (If Equipped)

### Closing the Moonroof



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch close feature, from either the open or vent positions. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

### VENTING THE MOONROOF



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console.



With the moonroof in the closed position, press and release the switch to vent the moonroof.



To close the moonroof from the vent position, press and release the moonroof close switch.

### MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

#### WHAT IS MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

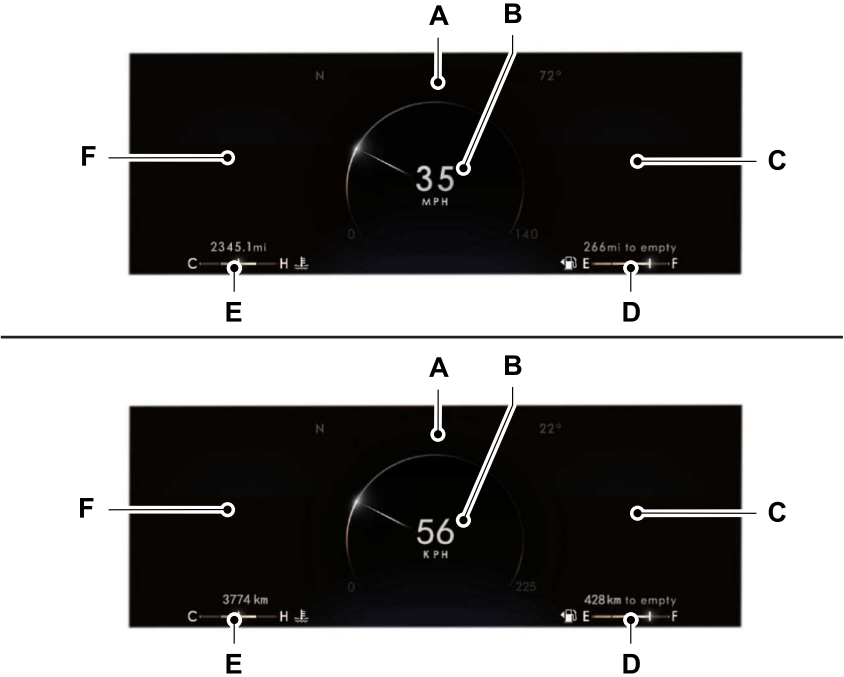
The moonroof stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

#### OVERRIDING MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK

Press and hold the close switch within two seconds after the moonroof comes to a stop.

# Instrument Cluster

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW



# Instrument Cluster

---

- A Status bar.
- B Speedometer.
- C Right information group.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- F Left information group.

## TACHOMETER

Indicates the engine speed.

## SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

## FUEL GAUGE

### WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

## FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

## LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

## WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 75 mi (120 km) to empty for MyKey, and at 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 12 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km) for all vehicle keys.

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

# Instrument Cluster

## WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

## ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

## ENGINE OIL PRESSURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine oil pressure.

**Note:** *This is a configurable gauge.*

## TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the transmission fluid temperature.

Special operating conditions can cause higher than normal operating temperatures. See **Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance** (page 537).

**Note:** *This is a configurable gauge.*

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

### Anti-Lock Brake System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates that the system requires service. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Battery



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# Instrument Cluster

## Brake System



It illuminates when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your



vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is released. If the parking brake is released, this indicates low brake fluid level or the brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** Indicators may vary depending on region.

## Door Ajar



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door is open.

## Electric Parking Brake



It illuminates or flashes when the electric parking brake requires service.

## Engine Coolant Temperature



If it illuminates, safely stop your vehicle and switch your vehicle off.

## Fasten Seatbelt



It illuminates and a tone sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

## Hood Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Liftgate Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the liftgate is not completely closed.

## Low Beam Warning



It illuminates when the low beam headlamp requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Low Fuel Level



It illuminates when the fuel level is low.

## Low Tire Pressure



It illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If illuminated, check your tire pressure as soon as possible. If it begins to flash at anytime, have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Low Washer Fluid Level



It illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

# Instrument Cluster

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the engine is off, this is normal operation. If it illuminates when the engine is on this indicates that the emission control system requires service. If it flashes, have your vehicle checked immediately. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 206). See **Emission Law** (page 621).

## Oil Pressure



It illuminates when the engine oil pressure is low.

## Powertrain Fault



It illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

### ActiveGlide™ (If Equipped)



See **ActiveGlide™** (page 286).

### Adaptive Cruise Control



See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 270).

### Airbag



See **Airbags** (page 61).

## Auto Hold



See **Auto Hold** (page 243).



## Automatic High Beam



See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 124).

## Auto Start-Stop



See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 208).



## Blind Spot Information System



See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 311).

# Instrument Cluster

## Cruise Control (If Equipped)



See **Instrument Cluster** (page 142).

## Front Fog Lamp



See **Exterior Lighting** (page 120).

## Headlamp High Beam



See **Exterior Lighting** (page 120).

## Hill Descent Control



See **Hill Descent Control** (page 250).

## Hill Start Assist



See **Hill Start Assist** (page 242).

## Lane Centering



See **Lane Centering** (page 279).

## Lane Keeping System



See **Lane Keeping System** (page 300).

## Parking Lamps



See **Exterior Lighting** (page 120).

## Pre-Collision Assist



See **Pre-Collision Assist** (page 321).

## Rear Fog Lamp



See **Exterior Lighting** (page 120).

## Stability and Traction Control



See **Stability Control** (page 247).  
See **Traction Control** (page 245).



## Turn Signal



See **Exterior Lighting** (page 120).

# Instrument Cluster Display

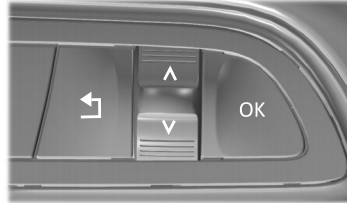
## USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** Some options could appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



### Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

### Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle button up or down to scroll through menu items.

### OK Button

Press to make a selection.

### Status Indicator



A check in the box indicates a feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

# Instrument Cluster Display

---

HUD
SETTINGS
DISPLAY SETUP
AUDIO
PHONE
NAVIGATION

## TRIP COMPUTER

### ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

Using the instrument cluster controls, select the following to access the trip computer:

Menu Item	Action
TRIP 1	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until the system reset confirmation appears.
TRIP 2	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until the system reset confirmation appears.

# Instrument Cluster Display

## RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES

Using the instrument cluster controls, select the following to reset individual trip values:

Menu Item	Action
TRIP 1	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until the system reset confirmation appears.
TRIP 2	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

You can customize the gauge displays through the following:

Menu Item	Action
Display	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Gauges	Press the <b>OK</b> button. Choose a gauge display.

# Personalized Settings

---

## CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Language**.
4. Select a language.

## CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Measurement Units**.
4. Select a measurement unit.

## CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Temperature Units**.
4. Select a temperature unit.

## CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Tire Pressure Units**.
4. Select a pressure unit.

# Head Up Display (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE HEAD UP DISPLAY

The system displays information on a display screen in your field of vision, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road. You can select which information the system displays.

## SWITCHING THE HEAD UP DISPLAY ON AND OFF

Use the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel to navigate to the head up display menu.

Menu Item	Action
HUD	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
HUD On	Press the <b>OK</b> button.

**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start the engine.*

## HEAD UP DISPLAY SETTINGS

You can control the system's options through the instrument cluster display by using the **HUD**, **OK** and arrow buttons on your steering wheel. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 148).

You can adjust the display according to your height to make viewing the content easier. You can also adjust what content displays and the brightness of the content. The system's options appear in the instrument cluster while the updates happen in the head up display.

**Note:** *If **HUD On** is unchecked, other options of the system are hidden.*

**Note:** *The head up display menu automatically closes after a certain period of inactivity.*

**Note:** *The head up display image brightness automatically adjusts to the brightness of the ambient environment. You have the ability to adjust the brightness further according to your preference.*

**Note:** *In some instances, sunlight can cause some reflections in and around the head up display image.*



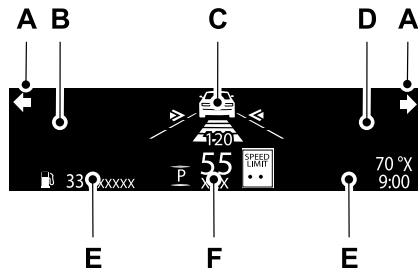
## Head Up Display (If Equipped)

Head-Up Display (HUD)		
Brightness	Follow onscreen directions to confirm or modify your settings.	
HUD Adjustments	Vertical Position	Follow onscreen directions to confirm or modify your settings.
	Image Rotation	
HUD Content	Turns the distance to empty, time and temperature on and off.	
	Cruise and Lane Control	Select Your Setting

**Note:** When you save a memory preset position, your current HUD settings are also saved to that memory preset position. See **What Is the Memory Function** (page 186).

## Head Up Display (If Equipped)

### HEAD UP DISPLAY INDICATORS



- A Signaling and traffic indication.
- B Left information group.
- C Advanced driver assistance systems display area.

- D Navigation display area.
- E Status bar.
- F Speedometer display area.

### Signaling and Traffic Indication

Displays turn signal indicators, blind spot information, if turn signal indicators are active, and cross traffic alert.

### Left Information Group

Displays incoming call information.

### Advanced Driver Assistance Systems Display Area

Displays adaptive cruise control and lane keeping system status and warnings.

### Navigation Display Area

Displays navigation next turn instructions.

### Status Bar

Displays distance to empty, time and outside air temperature. Next to distance to empty, the fuel gauge fill color could display and change colors to indicate a low fuel condition. You can switch off the status bar in the head up display settings menu.

### Speedometer Display Area

Displays current vehicle speed, speed limit, if available in the map database, and your transmission gear selection.

# Head Up Display (If Equipped)

---

## HEAD UP DISPLAY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HEAD UP DISPLAY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Head up Display (HUD) System Fault See Manual	The system is malfunctioning or something is obstructing the display. Make sure that the head up display is free from obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Head up Display (HUD) Use the Information Central Menu	Press the button on the steering wheel. The head up display menu appears in the instrument cluster display. Make sure the blue frame is fully visible. Do not manually move the screen. This can cause damage not covered by your vehicle's warranty.

# Remote Start

## WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and to adjust the interior temperature according to the settings that you chose.

## REMOTE START PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).

- The ignition is on.
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

**Note:** To use remote start with Lincoln Way or Phone as a Key, enable the modem. See **Connecting Lincoln Way to the Modem** (page 481).

## ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Remote Start** on or off.

**Note:** To remote start with Lincoln Way, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting Lincoln Way to the Modem** (page 481).

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE

### Remotely Starting the Vehicle



Press the button on the remote control.



Within three seconds, press the button on the remote control.

Within three seconds, press the button again.

**Note:** You can also use the Lincoln Way app to start the vehicle.

**Note:** The turn signals flash twice.

**Note:** The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

**Note:** The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

# Remote Start

**Note:** *The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.*

## Remotely Stopping the Vehicle



Within three seconds, press the button on the remote control.

Within three seconds, press the button again.

## EXTENDING THE REMOTE START DURATION

To extend the remote start duration during remote start, do the following:



Press the button on the remote control.



Within three seconds, press the button on the remote control.

Within three seconds, press the button again.

If the duration is set to 15 minutes, the duration extends by another 15 minutes. This provides a total of 30 minutes.

**Note:** *Remote start can only be extended once.*

**Note:** *A maximum of two remote starts, or one remote start with an extension, are allowed. To reset the restart procedure switch the vehicle to on, then to off.*

## REMOTE START REMOTE CONTROL INDICATORS

### Remote Control Feedback

An LED on the remote control provides status feedback of remote start or stop commands.

LED	Status
Solid green.	Remote start successful.
Solid red.	Remote stop successful.
Blinking red.	Request failed or status not received.
Blinking green.	Status incomplete.

## REMOTE START SETTINGS

### Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press **Auto** or **Last settings**.

# Remote Start

---

**Note:** If you switch the auto mode on, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 72°F (22°C). When you switch the vehicle on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

**Note:** If you switch the last settings on, the system remembers the last used settings.

## Heated Seat Settings (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Press **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** If you switch the heated seat settings on, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you remotely start your vehicle.

## Heated Steering Wheel Settings (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats and Steering Wheel**.
5. Press **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** If you switch the heated steering wheel settings on, the heated steering wheel turns on during cold weather.

**Note:** You cannot adjust the heated steering wheel settings when you remotely start your vehicle.

## Remote Start Duration

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press the duration you prefer.

# Climate Control


## IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT




Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF

**MENU** Press the button on the climate control unit to access additional controls for the climate system.

 Press the button on the touchscreen.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF

 Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*


## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF

**A/C** Press the button.

**Note:** *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

**Note:** *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

## SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF

 Press the button to switch the windshield air vents on.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF

**MENU** Press the button on the climate control unit to access additional controls for the climate system.

**MAX** Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

# Climate Control

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

**Note:** This button also activates the heated mirrors.

**Note:** Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Turn the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Press the toggle button on the left-hand side of the climate control upward or downward to set the left-hand temperature.

**Note:** This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Press the toggle button on the right-hand side of the climate control upward or downward to set the right-hand temperature.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR



Press the button to access additional controls for the climate system.



# Climate Control

## Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

**Note:** When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

## AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

# Climate Control

## SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the climate control unit to access additional controls for the climate system.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

### General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

## Recommended Settings for Cooling

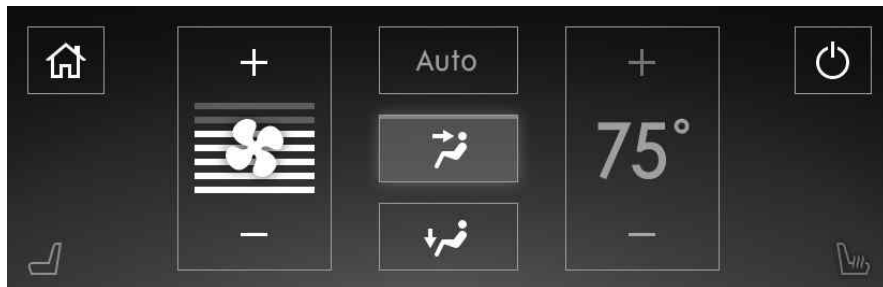
1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

## Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

# Rear Passenger Climate Control

## IDENTIFYING THE REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



**Note:** Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls could look different from what you see here.



Press the icon on the touchscreen to access the climate control features.

### SWITCHING THE REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROLS ON AND OFF



Press and release the button to switch the rear climate control on or off.

**Note:** If the system is on and Max Defrost is switched on through the front climate controls, the system turns off. It turns back on when Max Defrost is switched off.

**Note:** If Max Defrost is switched on, the system can be turned on at the same time.

### SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

Press the buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the volume of air circulated in the rear passenger compartment.

# Rear Passenger Climate Control



## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the buttons on the touchscreen to set the temperature in the rear passenger compartment.



## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Rear Console Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to direct airflow to the rear console air vents.

### Directing Air to the Rear Footwell Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to direct airflow to rear footwell air vents.

**Note:** Air can be directed through any combination of air vents.

## REAR AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING REAR AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch rear automatic operation on, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

## REAR PASSENGER CLIMATE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when the rear climate controls are locked through the front climate controls.

**Note:** If the rear climate controls are locked and the rear climate system is turned off, the indicator illuminates for a few seconds when you try to use any of the rear climate controls.

## WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

## REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 529).

**Note:** *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

**Note:** *Using an aftermarket cabin air filter could reduce cabin air filtration and climate control performance.*

# Front Seats

## FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS

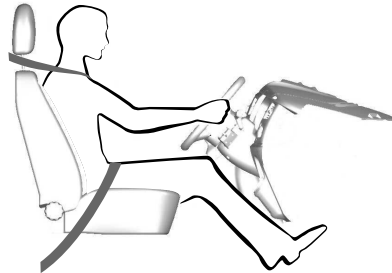
**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

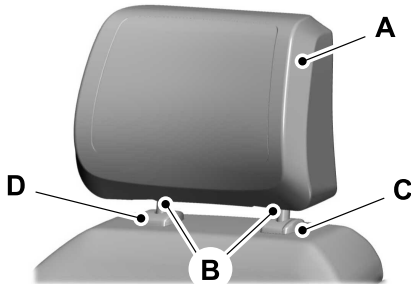
# Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## POWER SEATS

### HEAD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped).

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

To raise the head restraint, pull the head restraint up.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

To tilt the head restraint - if equipped:



# Front Seats

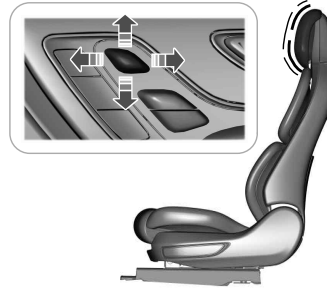


1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the preferred position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, untilted position.

**Note:** Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

## Power Head Restraints (If Equipped)



To raise the head restraint, lift the switch up.  
To lower the head restraint, press the switch down.

To move the head restraint forward, push the switch forward.

To move the head restraint rearward, push the switch rearward.

## REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

**Note:** You cannot remove head restraints that have audio system speakers.

## INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

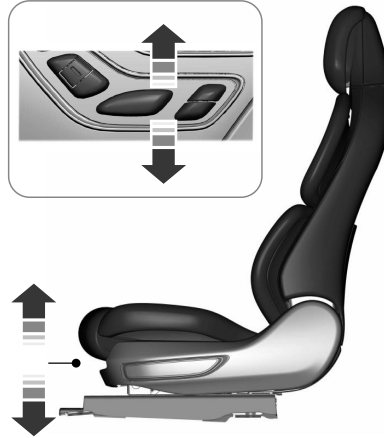
Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## Front Seats

### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



### ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION



### Adjusting the Length of the Seat Cushion



Press the top of the control to adjust the left side of the cushion.

Press the bottom of the control to adjust the right side of the cushion.

## Front Seats

### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



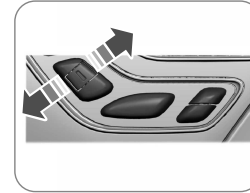
**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

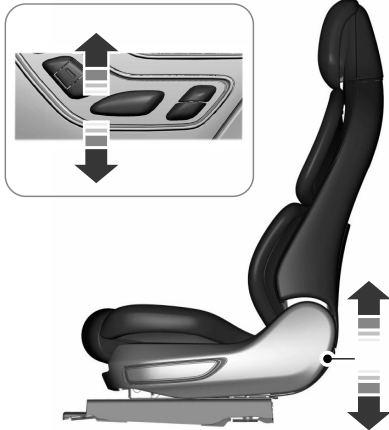


### Adjusting the Upper Seat Backrest



# Front Seats

## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



## ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



## MASSAGE SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

### MASSAGE SEAT LIMITATIONS

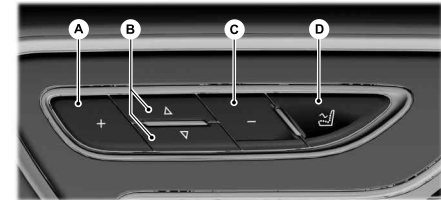
The vehicle must be running or be in accessory mode to activate the seats.

The passenger side massage is available if the occupant meets the seat sensor weight requirements.

Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. Selecting a different adjustment cancels the current one in progress. When the seat backrest and cushion are both active, the massage alternates between zones.

## ADJUSTING THE MESSAGE SEAT SETTINGS

### [Lincoln Massage Seats](#)



- A Increase the massage intensity.
- B Select the massage feature.
- C Decrease the massage intensity.
- D On and off.

# Front Seats

You can also adjust this feature through the touchscreen.

## HEATED SEATS

### HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

**Note:** *The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

### Automatic Climate Controlled Seats (If Equipped)

When you switch the auto setting on, the climate controlled seats switch between the heated seats and ventilated seats to match your climate control setting.

# Front Seats

## VENTILATED SEATS

### VENTILATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

Do not:

- Spill liquid on the front seats. This may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.
- Place cargo or objects under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to not work properly.

### SWITCHING THE VENTILATED SEATS ON AND OFF

#### [Automatic Climate Controlled Seats](#)

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press this symbol on the climate controls or the touchscreen to cycle through the various ventilation settings and off. More indicator lights indicate higher fan speeds.

**Note:** *When you switch the climate control fan speed and the ventilated seats to their maximum settings, the ventilated seats provide increased cooling.*

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the ventilated seats are on, the feature turns itself off unless the vehicle is in Auto-Start-Stop mode. You may need to reactivate the ventilated seats.

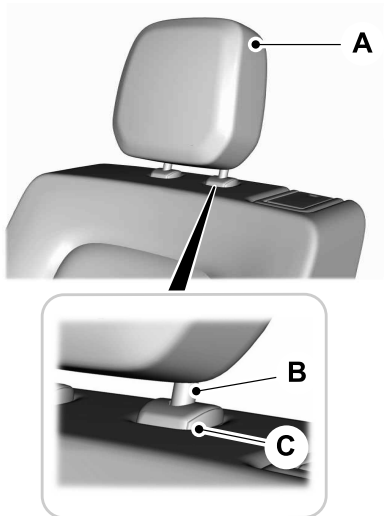
**Note:** *The ventilated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The ventilated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

## Rear Seats

### MANUAL SEATS

#### HEAD RESTRAINT COMPONENTS

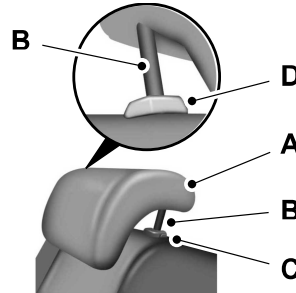
The second row outermost head restraints are not adjustable or foldable.



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing foam and structure.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

#### Second Row Center Head Restraint



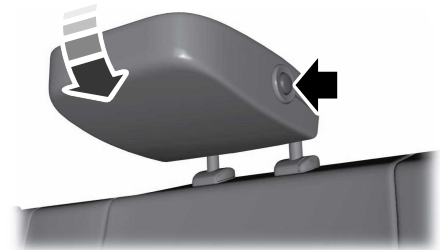
The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing foam and structure.
- B Two steel stems.

- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

#### Third Row Head Restraints

The third row head restraints are non-adjustable, but you may be able to fold them.



The head restraints consist of:

- A trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure.
- A fold button, if equipped.

## Rear Seats

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

For the second row center head restraint, pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

To fold the second row outermost and third row head restraints:

1. Press the fold button.
2. Pull the head restraint up to place it back to the upright position.

### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

For the second row outermost head restraints:

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

For the second row center head restraint:

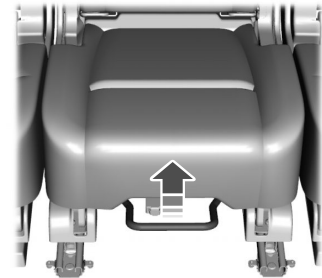
1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold guide sleeve adjust and release button and the guide sleeve unlock and remove button.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

For the second row outermost head restraints, make sure the fold button is facing the outermost side of the seat.

### MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



Lift the handle to move the second row center seat forward or backward.

**Note:** Move the seat forward to keep a child in a child restraint close to the front seat occupants. Move the seat to the full rearward position when it is occupied by older children or adults, including children in booster seats.



## Rear Seats

### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

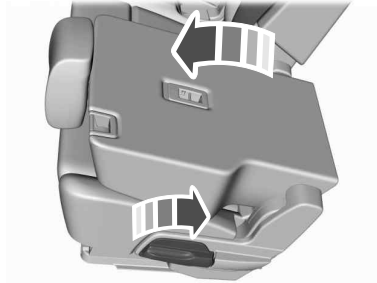


**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.



For the second row outermost seats, the release handle is on the outermost side of the seat cushion. Lift it to adjust the seat backrest to your preferred position.

### FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



1. Locate the handle on the outermost side of the seat cushion.
2. Pull up on the handle to fold the seat backrest.

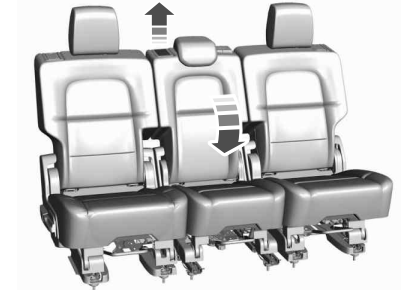
**Note:** Use caution when folding the seat backrest to the flat position as the seat moves forward when you lift the release handle.

### Folding the Second Row Center Seat

(If Equipped)



**WARNING:** To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.




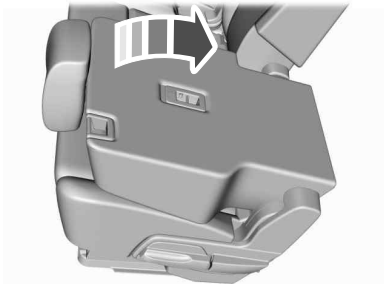
The release handle is in the upper right seat backrest. Pull the handle to release the folding seat latch.

**Note:** Use the same release handle to recline the seat backrest.

## Rear Seats

### UNFOLDING THE SEATS


 **WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.





1. Lift the seat backrest toward the rear of the vehicle.

2. Rotate the seat backrest until it engages, locking it in the upright position.

### ACCESSING THE THIRD ROW SEATS

 **WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle with a seat that is unlatched or in the folded position. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

 **WARNING:** Check under the seat cushion to make sure no cargo or objects are under the seat cushion before returning the seat cushion to its original position, and that the seat cushion locks into place. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly in the event of a crash, which could increase the risk of serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

**Note:** *You can move the outermost seats forward to allow access to the third row seats.*

This feature allows for easier entry and exit to and from the third row seat.

## Rear Seats



1. Pull the lever on the top of the seat backrest up.
2. Tilt the entire seat forward.
3. Slide the seat forward until it stops.

To return the seat to the seating position, slide the seat rearward while pulling down on the seat backrest until the latch fully engages.

To move the seat further back, pull the lever under the front of the seat and slide it backward.

**Note:** *You must move the seat to the full forward position before you move it rearward. Otherwise, the seat may not slide properly rearward.*

**Note:** *You can slide the outermost seats forward when using a child restraint.*

### Adjusting the Second Row Outermost Seats for Easy Exit



When exiting your vehicle from the third row seats, pull the lever up on the upper corner of the outermost seats. Then, push the seat forward until it stops.

## POWER SEATS

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

The third row outermost head restraints are fixed and cannot be removed.



## Rear Seats

Press the button on the head restraint or the button on the overhead console to fold the third row outermost head restraints. Pull the head restraint up to place it in the upright position.

**Note:** These head restraints fold when you press the fold flat button.

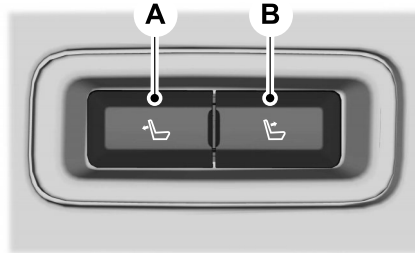
### ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

#### [Powerfold Seats](#)



**WARNING:** Do not recline a rear seat on which a child restraint is installed. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint.

The third-row power recline buttons are on the quarter trim panel on each side of the vehicle.

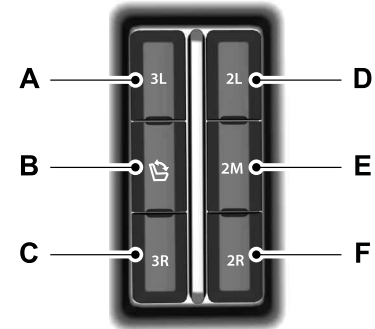


- A Moves the seat backrest rearward.
- B Moves the seat backrest forward.

### FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

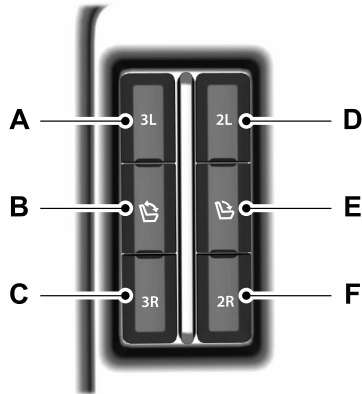
The control buttons are on the left-hand rear quarter trim panel and are accessible from the liftgate area.

### Second Row Bench Seats



## Rear Seats

### Second Row Captain Chairs



- A Folds the left-hand third-row seat.
- B Folds both third-row seats.
- C Folds the right-hand third-row seat.
- D Folds the left-hand second-row seat.

- E Folds the second-row bench center seat or both second-row captain chair seats.
- F Folds the right-hand second-row seat.

**Note:** The power fold seats operate for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off. The transmission must be in park (P) and the liftgate, or liftgate glass must be open. Similar to the battery saver feature, the power rear seats disable 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** Be sure the third-row center head restraint is in the lowered position before you power the rear seats down. The third-row outermost head restraints fold automatically when you press the fold button.

### UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

To return the second-row seat backrest to the original position, rotate the seat backrest up until it latches in the upright position. The seat backrest clicks when it is locked into position.

To return the third-row seat backrest to the original position, press the corresponding control again.

**Note:** If the third row seat does not completely fold or unfold, press and hold the seat button until the seat folds and unfolds twice.

If the power rear seat is disabled after 10 minutes, you can enable the seat by:

- Opening any door.
- Pressing the unlock button on the key fob.
- Pressing any keyless entry keypad button.
- Switching the ignition on.

### Folding Down the Rear Seats to the Load Floor



**WARNING:** To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.

## Rear Seats



**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

The third-row seats have obstacle detection that prevents the seats from folding or returning if they are obstructed.

### MESSAGE SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

#### MESSAGE SEAT LIMITATIONS

The engine must be running or the vehicle must be in accessory mode to activate the seats.

This feature is disabled when the child safety locks are on.

Allow a few seconds for any selection to activate. Selecting a different adjustment cancels the current one in progress. When the seat backrest and cushion are both active, the message alternates between zones.

#### SWITCHING THE MESSAGE SEATS ON AND OFF

You can adjust this feature through the rear touchscreen.

#### HEATED SEATS

#### HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

#### SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.

## Rear Seats

The rear seat heat controls are on the rear of the center console.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

**Note:** *The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

### Automatic Climate Controlled Seats (if Equipped)

When you switch the auto setting on, the climate controlled seats switch between the heated seats and ventilated seats to match your climate control setting.

### VENTILATED SEATS

#### VENTILATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

Do not:

- Spill liquid on the seats. This may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.
- Place cargo or objects under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to not work properly.

#### SWITCHING THE VENTILATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press this symbol on the climate controls or the rear touchscreen to cycle through the various ventilation settings and off. More indicator lights indicate higher fan speeds.

**Note:** *When you switch the climate control fan speed and the ventilated seats to their maximum settings, the ventilated seats provide increased cooling.*

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the ventilated seats are on, the feature switches itself off unless the vehicle is in Auto-Start-Stop mode. You may need to reactivate the ventilated seats.

**Note:** *The ventilated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The ventilated seats may also switch on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

# Rear Occupant Alert System

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

**Note:** *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

**Note:** *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*



# Rear Occupant Alert System

## SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

- 1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
- 2. Press **Vehicle**.
- 3. Switch **Rear Occupant Alert** on or off.

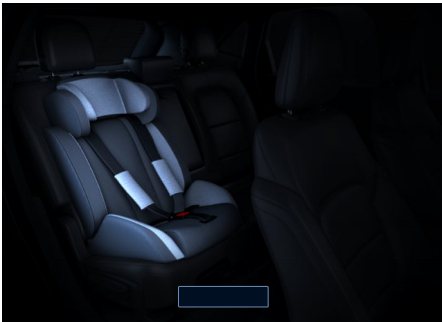
**Note:** The default setting is on.

**Note:** Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.

### Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

**Note:** Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

## Memory Function (If Equipped)

### WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The driver seat memory function recalls the position of these features:

- Driver seat.
- Power mirrors.
- Power steering column.
- Power adjustable foot pedals.

The passenger seat memory function recalls the position of the passenger seat.

### MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



**WARNING:** Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

### LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS



The memory control for the driver is on the driver door.

The memory control for the passenger is on the passenger door.

### SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Adjust the memory features to your preferred position.
2. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

A confirmation message appears in the information display.

You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

To save a preset position for the passenger door:

1. Adjust the passenger seat to your preferred position.
2. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

### RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

Press and release a preset button.

## Memory Function (If Equipped)

---

**Note:** *You can recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when you place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) if the ignition is on and the vehicle is not moving.*

**Note:** *Pressing any of the preset buttons or any memory feature control during a memory recall cancels the operation.*

You can also recall a preset memory position by:

- Pressing the unlock button on your remote control if you linked it to a preset position.
- Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked remote control is present.
- Recalling a personal profile in your SYNC menu.

Using a linked remote control to recall your memory position when the ignition is off moves the seat and steering column to the easy entry position.

To recall a preset position on the passenger door, press and release the preset button. The passenger seat features move to the position stored for that preset. You can recall a passenger seat preset memory at any time.

### **Linking a Preset Position to Your Remote Control or Passive Key**

See **Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile to a Remote Control** (page 516).

# Garage Door Opener

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER INTRODUCTION

### HomeLink Wireless Control System

The universal garage door opener replaces the common handheld garage door opener with a three-button transmitter integrated into the driver-side sun visor.



### How Does The Garage Door Opener Work

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. You can program garage doors as well as entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

Additional assistance can be found online at [www.homelink.com/Ford](http://www.homelink.com/Ford) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

### Garage Door Opener Limitations

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out, or quit, after several seconds – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal. U.S. gate operators time-out in the same manner.

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER PRECAUTIONS AND FREQUENCIES

### Garage Door Opener Precautions



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

# Garage Door Opener

## FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

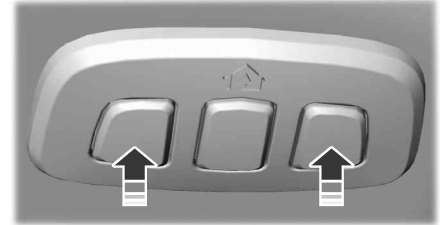
This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. End Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance. This transmitter must be at least 8 in (20 cm) from the user and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

## PROGRAMMING THE GARAGE DOOR OPENER

To clear all stored codes in the garage door opener in your vehicle, use the **clear** function. To override one button, use the **reprogram** function.

**Note:** *Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.*

## Clearing the Garage Door Opener



To clear all stored codes in the garage door opener in the vehicle:

1. Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the indicator above the buttons flashes rapidly.
2. When the indicator flashes, release the buttons.

**Note:** *This clears all stored codes. You cannot erase individual buttons.*

# Garage Door Opener

**Note:** You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after they have been initially programmed, you must either clear all codes, or reprogram each individual button.

**Note:** We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons.

## Reprogramming the Garage Door Opener

If a button on your garage door opener has already been programmed, you can override it. To program a device to a previously trained button:

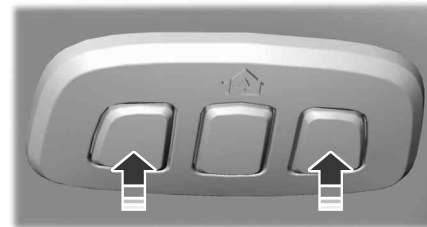
1. Press and hold the desired button for approximately 20 seconds until the indicator begins to flash.
2. Without releasing the button, proceed to Step 3 of **Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Handheld Transmitter**.

## Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Handheld Transmitter

**Note:** The programming steps below assume you are programming a HomeLink that was not previously programmed. If your HomeLink was previously programmed, you may need to **clear** or **reprogram** your HomeLink buttons.

**Note:** Put a new battery in the handheld transmitter. This allows for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

**Note:** Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.



To program your in-vehicle HomeLink function button with your handheld transmitter:

1. With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, switch your vehicle on, but do not start your vehicle.
2. Press and release one of the three HomeLink function buttons that you would like to program.

**Note:** The indicator should begin to flash. If the indicator does not flash, press and hold the function button for 20 seconds until the indicator begins to flash.

# Garage Door Opener

3. Hold your handheld garage door transmitter 1–3 in (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.
4. Press and hold the handheld transmitter button you want to program while watching the indicator on HomeLink. Continue to hold the handheld button until the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly or is continuously on.

**Note:** You may need to use a different method if you live in Canada or have difficulties programming your gate operator or garage door opener.

5. Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door.

**Note:** If the indicator stays on, the programming is complete.

**Note:** If the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly, repeat Step 5.

**Note:** If your device still does not operate, you must program your garage door.

6. To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1–4.

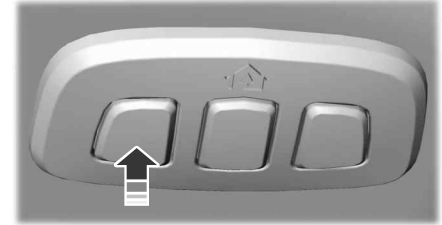
**Note:** Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.

## Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Garage Door Opener Motor

**Note:** Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.



1. Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.
2. Return to your vehicle.



3. Press and hold one of the three HomeLink function buttons you want to program for two seconds, then release.
4. Repeat Step 3. Depending on your brand of garage door opener, you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

Additional assistance can be found online at [www.homelink.com/Ford](http://www.homelink.com/Ford) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

# Garage Door Opener

---

## Programming the Garage Door Opener to your Gate Opener Motor

### Gate Operator / Canadian Programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time-out (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to time-out in the same manner.

**Note:** *If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised that you unplug the device during the **cycling** process to prevent possible overheating.*

1. Press and release your handheld transmitter, **every two seconds**, until the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly or is continuously on.
2. Release the handheld transmitter button.
3. Press and hold the HomeLink function button you want to program for two seconds, then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door.

**Note:** *If the indicator stays on, the programming is complete.*

**Note:** *If the HomeLink indicator flashes rapidly, repeat Step 3.*

4. To program additional buttons, repeat Steps 1–4.

Additional assistance can be found online at [www.homelink.com/Ford](http://www.homelink.com/Ford) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER ADDITIONAL ASSISTANCE

### Video Setup Instructions

[Universal Garage Door Opener: HomeLink](#)

[Universal Garage Door Opener: HomeLink for Genie Intellicode 2](#)

[Universal Garage Door Opener Homelink for Genie Intellicode](#)

Additional assistance can be found online at [www.homelink.com/Ford](http://www.homelink.com/Ford) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.



# USB Ports

## LOCATING THE USB PORTS

### Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

**Note:** *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

**Note:** *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

**Note:** *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

### Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- In the frunk.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend

against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.



Press the audio button on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

# USB Ports

---

Press and hold to fast rewind.

## CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

### Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

### Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

# Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

---

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 240 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the front of the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- On the passenger side floor panel.
- 3rd row on the quarter trim panels.

# Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 110V Power Outlet

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet is a socket that connects an electrical device to your vehicle's power supply.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

## POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

You should not use the power outlet for these types of electric devices:

- Cathode ray tube televisions.
- Motor loads, such as vacuum cleaners, electric saws or other electric power tools and compressor-driven refrigerators.
- Measuring devices which process precise data, such as medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

**Note:** Some devices may exceed the power rating on the device label when they are initially plugged-in and may require you to press the device power button more than one time in order to allow a soft start. After multiple attempts, if the device remains off, please consider that your device may require more than the available power.

**Note:** The power outlet provides full available power when the vehicle is in park (P). Power availability may be reduced when the vehicle is in drive (D). If more than one outlet is available in the vehicle, power is divided between the outlets that are in use at the same time.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet is on the instrument panel or the rear of the center console.



# Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 110V Power Outlet

## POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Indicator Status	Description
On	When the indicator light is on, the outlet is providing power.
Off	When the indicator light is off, there is no power to the outlet.
Flashing	When the indicator light is flashing, the outlet is in a fault mode.

## Fault mode

The power outlet temporarily turns off power if the device exceeds the watt limit.

1. Unplug your device.
2. Switch your vehicle off to let the system cool and reset the fault mode.

3. Switch your vehicle back on, but do not plug your device back in.
4. With your vehicle on, make sure the indicator light remains on.
5. Make sure your device does not exceed the power limits and then plug in your device.

**Note:** *If a fault occurs again, your device may exceed the capacity available from the power outlet.*

# Wireless Accessory Charger

## WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

**Note:** During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

## LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console or in the media bin below the instrument panel.

## CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running, or when SYNC is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.

## Wireless Accessory Charger

---



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging has been interrupted.

**Note:** *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

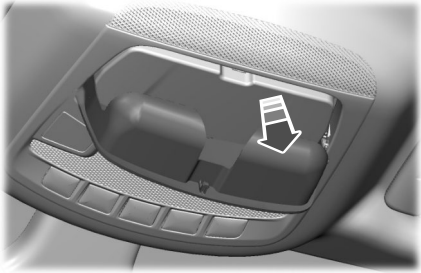
**Note:** *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

# Storage

---

## OVERHEAD STORAGE

### OPENING THE OVERHEAD STORAGE COMPARTMENT



Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

## GLOVE COMPARTMENT

### OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT



Pull the latch to the left to open.

## CENTER CONSOLE

### OPENING THE CENTER CONSOLE





To open the center console storage compartment, grab the handle and lift up.





# Starting and Stopping the Engine


## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 **WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

**Note:** *If you use your vehicle regularly above the altitude of 7,500 ft (2,286 m) and under the temperature of -4.0°F (-20°C), it is recommended to use the alternative engine oil. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 467).*

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



### Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

### Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

**Note:** *Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after approximately 30 minutes of inactivity in accessory mode.*

**Note:** *The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

**Note:** *You need a valid key inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
  - Make sure that the parking brake is on.
  - Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).
1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

**Note:** *The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.



**WARNING:** Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and engine block heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- If the engine block heater cord is under the hood, do not remove the wiring from its original location. Do not close the hood on the extension wiring.

- Park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- Firmly connect the engine block heater cord and the extension cord.
- Check the extension cord for heat anywhere when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Unplug and properly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle. The protective cover seals the terminals of the engine block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Check the engine block heater system for proper operation before winter.

### HOW DOES THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER WORK

The engine block heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

**Note:** The engine block heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

## USING THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the engine block heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Press the push button ignition switch.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop is a feature that switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

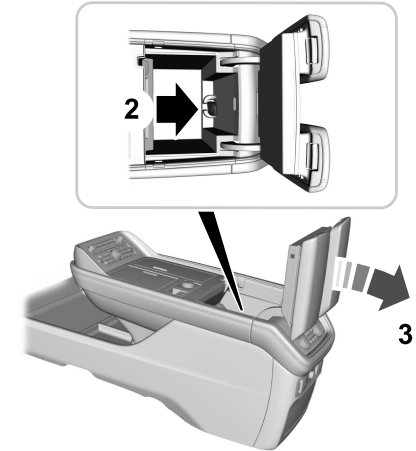
You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

**Note:** You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

## ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:



1. Access the backup slot.
2. With the buttons facing the front of your vehicle, place the passive key into the backup slot.
3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal, then press the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS

### Malfunction Indicator Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, the on-board diagnostics system is detecting a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire could be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Powertrain Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a powertrain or four-wheel drive fault. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle could cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting System Fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No Key Detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

### Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

### Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

### Why does the system not detect a passive key?

If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 205).

## Auto-Start-Stop (If Equipped)

### WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

### AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

### SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the button to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

**Note:** *Deactivating the system using the button lasts only one key cycle.*

Press the button again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system turns off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

### STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

### RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

### AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



# Auto-Start-Stop (If Equipped)



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** *You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.*

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

## Auto-Start-Stop (If Equipped)

---

### **AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

#### **Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

#### **Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

#### **Can I permanently switch the system off?**

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

#### **Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?**

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL QUALITY

### SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL



Your vehicle operates on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. The use of these fuels could result in engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 349).

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance.

For additional information, visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

**Note:** *Use of any fuel for which the vehicle was not designed can impair the emission control system, cause loss of vehicle performance, and cause damage to the engine which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl, which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

## LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is under the luggage compartment floor covering.

# Fuel and Refueling

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

### FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

### ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 212).

**Note:** *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.

# Fuel and Refueling

6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

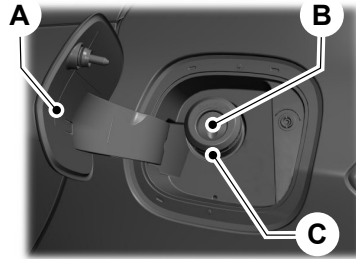
**Note:** If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.

**Note:** You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

## REFUELING

### REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

### REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE

[Easy Fuel Capless Filler](#)

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

# Fuel and Refueling

**WARNING:** Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

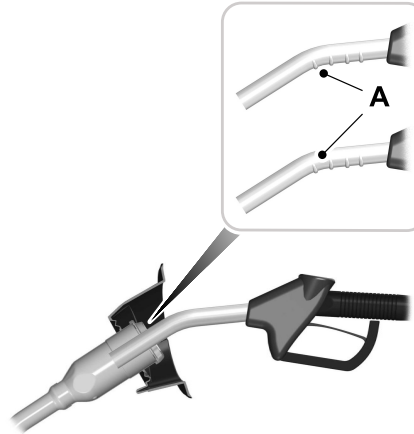
**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

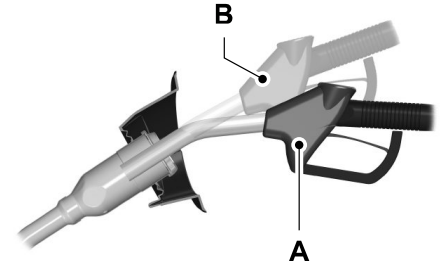
**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.

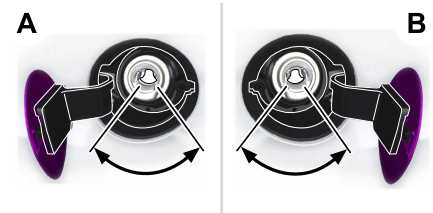
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

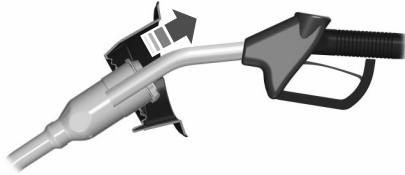


4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position A when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position B can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



## Fuel and Refueling

5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown. Refer to A for left hand drive or B for right hand drive.

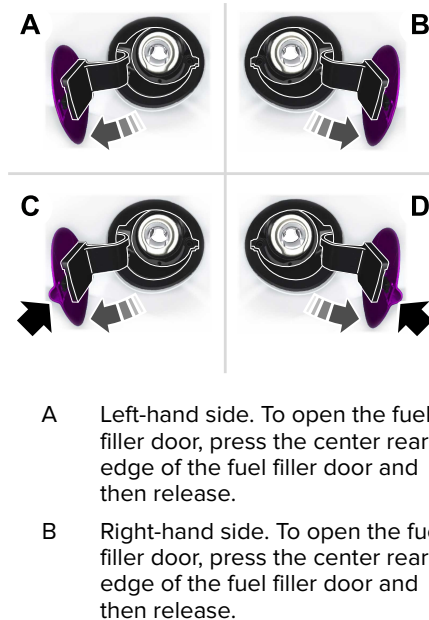


6. When the pump shuts off, wait five seconds, then raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

### MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



### FUEL TANK CAPACITY

#### Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.



# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

## FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

### Refueling System Warning

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

Message
Check Fuel Fill Inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 212). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.
9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

**Note:** *The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

# Catalytic Converter

## WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.

- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 391).
- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 211).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

**Note:** Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

# Catalytic Converter

---

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Automatic Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

### PARK (P)



**WARNING:** Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

**Note:** A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

**Note:** Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

**Note:** The electronic parking brake could apply when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 236).

**Note:** Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P). See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 223).

**Note:** A tone could sound when you select park (P).

### REVERSE (R)



**WARNING:** Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

### NEUTRAL (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

# Automatic Transmission

## DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

## SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR

The transmission selector is on the center stack.



1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press a button to select a position.

**Note:** The position illuminates on the transmission selector.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



**Note:** The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.

## MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS

### SHIFTING USING THE PADDLE SHIFTERS

The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

**Note:** Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.



### Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gear.

**Note:** We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.

- Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.
- Pull the right (+) paddle to upshift.

# Automatic Transmission

- Pull the left (-) paddle to downshift.
- Hold the + paddle for a few seconds to switch the feature off.

**Note:** The feature switches off after a short period of time if neither paddle is pulled.

## TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

### WHAT IS TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

### HOW DOES TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE WORK

Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N) when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off. For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

**Note:** You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you stay in your vehicle with power on.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **What Is Automatic Return to Park (P)** (page 223).

### TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE LIMITATIONS

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 V battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### ENTERING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Power your vehicle on.
2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

3. Press and hold the brake pedal.

4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** An instructional message appears.

5. Press the neutral (N) button.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.

### EXITING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

# Automatic Transmission

---

## AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

**Note:** *Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 201).*

## AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if the door ajar sensor or seatbelt sensor are malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Transmission Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

### Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

### HOW DOES FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE WORK

#### Using the 1-Speed Automatic Four-Wheel Drive System

The 1-speed automatic four-wheel drive system utilizes an electronically controlled on-demand 1-speed transfer case. This system monitors various vehicle sensory inputs to provide an increased level of performance. This system offers the driver two-wheel drive high, four-wheel drive auto and four-wheel drive high as available modes of operation via the selectable drive mode switch. When four-wheel drive auto is selected, the system continuously varies power to the front wheels for optimum performance for all on-road conditions. When four-wheel drive high is selected, the system provides power to the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or slippery conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud. There is further information on driving in unique driving conditions. See **Driving Hints** (page 384).

#### Using the 2-Speed Automatic Four-Wheel Drive System (If Equipped)

The 2-speed automatic four-wheel drive system utilizes an electronically controlled on-demand 2-speed transfer case. This system monitors various vehicle sensory inputs to provide an increased level of performance. This system offers the driver two-wheel drive high, four-wheel drive auto, four-wheel drive high, and four-wheel drive low as available modes of operation. When four-wheel drive auto is selected, the system continuously varies power to the front wheels for optimum performance for all on-road conditions. When either four-wheel drive high or four-wheel drive low are selected with the appropriate drive modes, the four-wheel drive system provides electronically locked power to the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or slippery conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud. Selecting slow climb also provides additional gearing for increased torque multiplication for conditions like deep sand, snow, steep slopes, or pulling

heavy objects. See **Slow Climb** (page 297). Additionally, the system is capable of recreational flat towing by putting the transfer case into neutral (N). See **Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle** (page 397).

There is further information on driving in unique driving conditions. See **Driving Hints** (page 384).

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Truck and utility vehicles can differ from some other vehicles. Your vehicle could be higher to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting stuck or damaging underbody components. The differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car. Always maintain steering wheel control, especially in rough terrain. Since sudden changes in terrain can result in abrupt steering wheel motion, make sure you grip the steering wheel from the outside. Do not grip the spokes. Drive cautiously to avoid vehicle damage from concealed objects such

as rocks and stumps. Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle. Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

**Note:** *Do not use four-wheel drive high or four-wheel drive low mode on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so can produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and can damage drive components.*

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

#### Operating Four-Wheel Drive with a Spare or Mismatched Tires (If Equipped)

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the size of the spare tire can affect the four-wheel drive system. If there is a significant difference between the size of the spare tire and the remaining tires, you could have limited four-wheel drive functionality. When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, we recommend that you do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) with a four-wheel drive mode turned on.
- Use a four-wheel drive mode on dry pavement.

Driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can limit four-wheel drive functionality. You can experience the following:

- Additional noise from the transfer case or other drive components.

Use of a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Comfort and noise.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet driving capability.
- Four-wheel drive capability.

**Note:** *Your vehicle could have a front air dam that can become damaged, due to reduced ground clearance, when taking your vehicle off-road. You can remove this air dam by removing the eight bolts that secure it.*

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

**Note:** Your vehicle could have side steps that can become damaged, due to reduced ground clearance, when taking your vehicle off-road. Remove side steps before driving your vehicle off-road.

### SELECTING A FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODE

To select a specific four-wheel drive mode please select one of the desired drive modes. For additional information. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 295).

**Note:** When shifting to and from four-wheel drive, a message appears in the instrument cluster display indicating that the system is in the process of making a shift.

**Note:** Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping or while applying the accelerator pedal.

If the system detects a fault, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Four-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 228).

**Note:** Do not use *DEEP CONDITIONS* or *SLOW CLIMB* on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so produces excessive noise, increases tire wear and may damage drive components. The 4X4 system in these modes is only intended for consistently slippery or loose surfaces.

### Shifting to or from Slow Climb (4L)

To select or exit SLOW CLIMB (4L):

1. Bring your vehicle to a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
2. Place the transmission in neutral (N).
3. Select SLOW CLIMB on the drive mode switch.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display indicating a four-wheel drive shift is in progress. If any of the above shift conditions are not present, the shift will not occur and a message appears in the instrument cluster display guiding you through the proper shifting procedures. If there is a transfer case tooth blockage, a message appears in the instrument cluster

display. To alleviate this condition, place the transmission in a forward gear, move your vehicle forward approximately 4.9 ft (1.5 m), and shift the transmission back to neutral (N) to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.

**Note:** You could hear some noise as the system shifts or engages which is normal. If the system detects a fault, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Four-Wheel Drive – Information Messages** (page 228).

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODES

#### TWO-WHEEL DRIVE HIGH

2H turns on when you select NORMAL or CONSERVE. Two-wheel drive high is for general on-road driving. Power is sent to the rear wheels only.

**Note:** Two-wheel drive high can turn on or off based on Drive Mode selection See **Drive Mode Control** (page 294).

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE AUTO

4A turns on when you select EXCITE, NORMAL 4x4 AUTO or SLIPPERY. Four-wheel drive auto provides electronically controlled four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels, as required, for increased traction in varying on-road conditions. The four-wheel drive auto tuning varies based on selected Drive Mode. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 295).

**Note:** *Four-wheel drive auto can turn on or off automatically based on Drive Mode selection. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 295).*

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE HIGH

4H turns on when you select DEEP CONDITIONS. Four-wheel drive high provides electronically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or winter conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud. This mode is not for use on dry pavement.

**Note:** *Four-wheel drive high can turn on or off automatically based on Drive Mode selection. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 295).*

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LOW

This mode turns on when you select SLOW CLIMB. It provides electronically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use on low traction surfaces, and does so with additional gearing for increased torque multiplication. This mode is only for off-road conditions, such as deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

**Note:** *Four-wheel drive low can turn on or off automatically based on drive mode selection. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 295).*

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE INDICATORS

#### Two-wheel Drive High

**2H** Momentarily illuminates when two-wheel drive high is selected.

### Four-wheel Drive Auto

**4A** Continuously illuminates when four-wheel drive auto is selected.

### Four-wheel Drive High


**4H** Continuously illuminates when four-wheel drive high is selected.

### Four-wheel Drive Low (If Equipped)

**4L** Continuously illuminates when four-wheel drive low is selected.

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – WARNING LAMPS

 Illuminates when a four-wheel drive or power train fault is present.

# Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

**Note:** When a system fault is present, the system can typically remain in whichever mode was selected prior to the fault condition occurring. It does not default to two-wheel drive in all circumstances. When this warning is displayed, have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer.

## FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Check 4x4	A four-wheel drive system fault is present. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
4x4 Shift in Progress	The four-wheel drive system is making a shift.
For 4x4 LOW Shift to N	Displays when you attempt to switch to four-wheel drive low mode and you do not shift the transmission to neutral (N).
For 4x4 LOW Slow to 3 MPH	
For 4x4 LOW Slow to 5 km/h	
To Exit 4x4 LOW Shift to N	Displays when you attempt to switch from four-wheel drive low mode and you do not shift the transmission to neutral (N).
To Exit 4x4 LOW Slow to 3 MPH	Displays when you attempt to switch from four-wheel drive low mode and your vehicle's speed is greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).
To Exit 4x4 LOW Slow to 5 km/h	

## Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Shift Delayed Drive Forward	Displays when there is a transfer case gear tooth blockage while shifting to or from four-wheel drive low mode or to the neutral state. Place the transmission in a forward gear, move your vehicle forward approximately 5 ft (1.5 m), and shift the transmission back to neutral (N) to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.
4x4 Temporarily Disabled	Displays when the four-wheel system detects elevated system temperature and temporarily stops providing power to the front wheels. The system automatically resumes normal function when the system temperature returns to normal.
4x4 Restored	Displays when the four-wheel drive system resumes normal function.
4X4 Temporarily Locked	Displays when the four-wheel drive system detects driving condition which temporarily require greater four-wheel drive performance. The system automatically resumes normal function after the system no longer detects these driving conditions.
Shift to Neutral	Displays when the system requires an additional transmission shift to neutral (N) to complete a transfer case shift.

# Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (If Equipped)

---

## WHAT IS THE ELECTRONIC LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL

The electronic limited-slip differential system directs torque across the axle, enabling the vehicle to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional axle cannot. The system is active at all times and requires no input from the driver.

**Note:** *If your vehicle is not at optimal operating conditions or a system fault is present, a warning may display in the instrument cluster. Depending on the warning, you may need to service your vehicle.*

## Operating the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential with a Spare or Mismatched Tires

If your vehicle has an electronic limited-slip differential, do not use a spare tire of a different size than the tire provided. If you have a spare tire installed, a message may appear indicating the system has disabled automatically or reduced function to prevent system overheat and damage. We recommend you reinstall the repaired or replaced spare tire as soon as possible. When you replace the spare tire, the system resumes normal operation on the next key cycle.

## Trailer Towing

The electronic limited-slip differential enhances vehicle stability during trailer tow operation. During high demand trailering events, such as steep slopes, high speeds or with a spare tire, the system may provide a warning in the instrument cluster and reduce function or enter a temporarily disabled state. To resume normal function, stop the vehicle in a safe location and allow the unit to adequately cool. Once the system reaches normal operating temperatures, system function restores and the electronic limited-slip differential restored message displays.

## Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (If Equipped)

### ELECTRONIC LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRONIC LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
Check Electronic Limited Slip Differential	Displays when the system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electronic Limited Slip Differential Off See Owner's Manual	Displays when the system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electronic Limited Slip Differential Restored to Normal	Displays when the electronic limited slip differential system resumes normal function.
Electronic Limited Slip Differential Temporarily Disabled	Displays if the electronic limited slip differential system temporarily turns off due to overheating or an undersized spare tire. If you have an undersized spare tire installed, replace the spare tire with a full-sized tire as soon as possible. If not, stop the vehicle in a safe location and allow the system to cool.
Electronic Limited Slip Differential Reduced Torque	Displays if the electronic limited slip differential has limited functionality. This could be due to an undersized spare tire or caused by the system overheating. If you have an undersized spare tire installed, replace the spare tire with a full-sized tire as soon as possible. If you do not have an undersized spare tire installed, the vehicle has reduced functionality. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Brakes

## BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country where your vehicle was originally built, the stoplamps could flash during heavy braking. The hazard warning flashers could also turn on when your vehicle comes to a stop.

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

## BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 415).

## CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



**WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.



# Brakes



1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

**Note:** To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 467).

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 475).

## BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

## **BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?**

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

### **There is an electrical motor sound when I press on the brake pedal or activate the park brake switch. Is this normal?**

Yes, those sounds are the electronic brake booster or the electronic park brake operating.

**Note:** *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 431).*

# Electric Parking Brake

## WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The electric parking brake switch is on the center console.

Pull the switch up to apply the electric parking brake. The red warning lamp flashes, then steadily illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could apply when park (P) is selected. See **Park (P)** (page 220).

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

## MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

### Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.

# Electric Parking Brake

5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

## AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 391).

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

#### Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

#### Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

# Electric Parking Brake

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h). Release the electric parking brake before continuing to drive.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Brake maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode to allow brake service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Reverse Braking Assist (If Equipped)

### WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST

#### [\*Lincoln Reverse Brake Assist\*](#)

The system uses sensors on the rear of your vehicle to detect a possible collision and applies the brakes to either reduce the damage from impact, or to assist in avoiding the collision.

### HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST WORK

Reverse braking assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 1–7 mph (2–12 km/h).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system.

### REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

## Reverse Braking Assist (If Equipped)

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

**Note:** The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

**Note:** You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

### SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Reverse Brake Assist** on or off.

**Note:** The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid, cross traffic alert or traction control is off.

**Note:** If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert the reverse braking assist relies on input from the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

**Note:** The default setting is on in some regions.

### OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

### REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

# Reverse Braking Assist (If Equipped)

## REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

## REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays when the system applies the brakes and remains on for a few seconds.
Reverse Brake Assist Not Available See Manual	Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. Make sure the parking aids and cross traffic alert systems are on. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Fault	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.



## Reverse Braking Assist (If Equipped)

### REVERSE BRAKING ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is reverse braking assist unavailable?

- Make sure the reverse braking assist is on. See **Switching Reverse Braking Assist On and Off** (page 239).
- Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- If your vehicle has the cross traffic alert system, make sure it is on. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 318).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on. See **Parking Aids** (page 255).
- Make sure the traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 245).

**Note:** *The traction control automatically turns off if four-wheel drive low and certain drive modes such as mud/ruts and snow/sand is activated.*

- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.
- An anti-lock brake, traction control or stability control event may have occurred. Reverse braking assist resumes operation when the event is complete.
- Make sure the rear view camera and 360 degree camera are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the camera. If the message still appears after cleaning the camera, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, have the system checked.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert, rear parking aid and side parking aid sensors are not blocked or faulty. See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 318). See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 256). See **Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors** (page 259).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.

- Reverse braking assist does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

**Note:** *If the answers to why the system is unavailable do not assist in returning reverse braking assist to available, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

# Hill Start Assist

## WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST


Hill Start Assist makes it easier for you to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without using the parking brake.


## HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the vehicle is stationary beyond hill start assist hold time.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

## HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

## HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Auto Hold

## HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

## SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



Press the button on the center console to switch the system on and off. The indicator light illuminates when the system is on.

**Note:** You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

**Note:** When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off, or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to ensure auto hold is not active.

## USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

**Note:** The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

# Auto Hold

---

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 236).

**Note:** Auto hold cancels if you shift into reverse (R), or neutral (N), and press the brake pedal.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R), or neutral (N) before the system is active.
- Your vehicle is in temporary neutral mode.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

## AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.

# Traction Control

## WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

## HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your wheels begin to spin, the loss of traction can compromise steering control and stability of the vehicle. The traction control system applies the brakes to individual wheels and when needed, reduces engine power at the same time to increase traction.

## SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system turns traction control and stability control on each time you power on your vehicle.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

**Note:** When you switch traction control off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the information display.

Turn the system back on to return to normal operation.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

**Note:** When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

Your vehicle could have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **Configurable MyKey Settings** (page 82).

## TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR

### Stability and Traction Control Indicator



If the indicator does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



The traction control off indicator illuminates when you switch the traction control system off, or when an alternative stability control mode is selected that requires the traction control off depending on the drive mode selected.

# Traction Control

---

## TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

## TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system after you switch it off.
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switch it on.

# Stability Control

## HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle

increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or traction control you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

### Electronic Stability Control

Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

### Roll Stability Control

Roll stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

### Curve Control

Curve control enhances your vehicle's ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve control operates by reducing engine power and, if necessary, applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually.

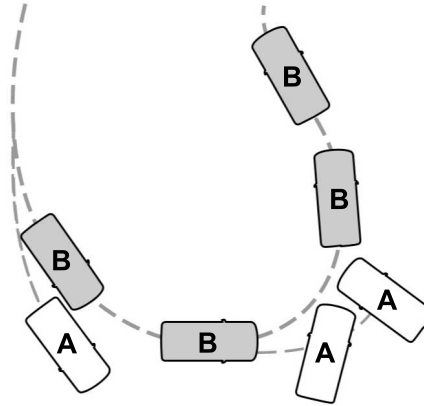
# Stability Control

## Side Wind Stabilization

Side wind stabilization is an advanced feature that works by carefully applying the brakes on one side of the vehicle to reduce the effect of a side wind gust on the vehicle's path.

## Traction Control

Traction control enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Traction Control** (page 245).



- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Shifting the transmission into reverse (R) will disable the system.

You can switch the traction control system off or on independently. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 245).



# Stability Control

## Stability Control and Traction Control with Roll Stability Control

	Stability Control OFF Light	Roll Stability Control <sup>2</sup>	Electronic Stability Control <sup>2</sup>	Traction Control System <sup>2</sup>
Default at start-up	Illuminated during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled <sup>2</sup>	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	illuminated	Enabled	Enabled <sup>2</sup>	Disabled <sup>1</sup>
Button not pressed and transfer case is switched to 4x4 Low	illuminated	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Traction Control system can still be enabled but with tighter or looser thresholds.

<sup>2</sup> Functions can vary depending on what selectable drive mode the vehicle is currently in.

## STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Hill Descent Control (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS HILL DESCENT CONTROL

Hill descent control allows the driver to set and maintain vehicle speed while descending steep slopes in various surface conditions.

## HOW DOES HILL DESCENT CONTROL WORK


Hill descent control can maintain vehicle speeds on downhill slopes between 2–20 mph (3–32 km/h). Above 20 mph (32 km/h), the system remains on but the descent speed cannot be set or maintained.


**Note:** *The system does not function below 2 mph (3 km/h).*


The system requires a cool down interval after a period of sustained use. Hill descent control provides a warning in the message center and a tone sounds when the system is about to disengage for cooling. At this time, manually apply the brakes as needed to maintain descent speed.

**Note:** *The amount of time that the system can remain active before cooling varies with conditions.*

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Hill descent control cannot control descent in all surface conditions and circumstances, such as ice or extremely steep grades. Hill descent control is a driver assist system and cannot substitute for good judgment by the driver. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.

**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

## SWITCHING HILL DESCENT CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Hill Descent Control** on or off.

**Note:** *A message appears in the information display when the system is active.*

# Hill Descent Control (If Equipped)

## SETTING THE HILL DESCENT SPEED

To increase or decrease the descent speed, press the accelerator or brake pedal, or use

the SET + and SET - buttons on the steering wheel. Once you reach the preferred speed remove your feet from the pedals.

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL INDICATOR



Illuminates when you switch hill descent control on.

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
For Hill Descent Reduce Speed XX MPH/km/h or Less	Your vehicle speed requirement for off-road mode entry has not been met.
For Hill Descent Select Gear	You need to select a transmission gear for hill descent mode.
Hill Descent Driver Resume Control	Hill descent control mode is deactivated and you must resume control.
Hill Descent Control Fault	A hill descent system fault is present.
Hill Descent Control Off System Cooling	The hill descent system is cooling due to overuse.
Hill Descent Control not available with Cruise Control Active	The hill descent system cannot activate while Cruise Control is actively controlling speed.

# Steering

## ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

### HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving the system switches off and you retain normal steering function. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

## ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

**Note:** *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

## STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STEERING – WARNING INDICATORS



The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

**Note:** *If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.*

# Steering

## STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Steering

---

## **STEERING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does it seem that the steering is wandering or pulling?**

Check your vehicle for an improperly inflated or uneven tire, loose or worn suspension or steering components, or improper vehicle alignment.

### **The system is functioning properly and the components have been checked, why is the steering system continuing to pull or wander?**

A high crown in the road or crosswinds could make the steering system feel like it is wandering or pulling.

# Parking Aids

## PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

**Note:** Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.


**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

# Parking Aids

**Note:** When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the parking aids off. See *MyKey™* (page 82).

## SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

 Press the parking aid button and use the menu to turn the system on and off.

The system can also be turned off using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

## REAR PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

### REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the rear parking aid off.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The sensor coverage area is up to 71 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

## LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.



# Parking Aids

## REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.*

## FRONT PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

## FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The sensor coverage area is up to 28 in (70 cm) from the bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle and provides an audible warning, for example another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

## LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

# Parking Aids

## FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

**Note:** *If the detected object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

## SIDE PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE SIDE PARKING AID

The front and rear outermost parking aid sensors map objects that are near to the sides of your vehicle.

### SIDE PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The sensor coverage is up to 24 in (60 cm) from the sides of your vehicle.

The side parking aid may not function if:

- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system activates.
- The traction control system activates.
- Your vehicle is in park (P).
- The steering wheel angle information is not available. You must drive at least 492 ft (150 m) above 19 mph (30 km/h) to reset the steering wheel angle information.

**Note:** *If you switch traction control off, the side sensing system also turns off.*

To reinitialize the system, drive the length of your vehicle.

The side parking aid does not detect an object that is moving toward the side of your vehicle, for example another vehicle moving at a low speed, if it does not pass a front or rear parking aid sensor.

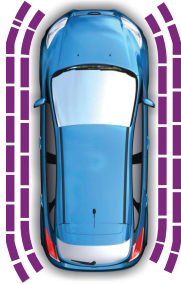
If the transmission is in reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 24 in (60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always present in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the side sensing system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving slowly and there is a front or rear parking aid obstacle detected, and the side obstacle is within 24 in (60 cm) from the side of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off.

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the side sensing system provides audible and visual warnings. When your vehicle is moving slowly, obstacles are detected within 24 in (60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

# Parking Aids

## LOCATING THE SIDE PARKING AID SENSORS

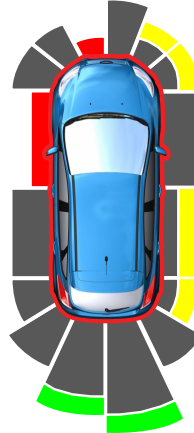


The side parking sensors are located in the sides of the front and rear bumpers.

## SIDE PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

When the side parking aid detects an object within the coverage area and the driving path of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As your vehicle moves closer to the object, the rate of the tone increases.

## PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information and entertainment display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator waves and the lines move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator lines are grey.

Visual indication remains on when your vehicle is in reverse (R). In any other gear, when you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the parking aids are not available, the side distance indicator lines do not display.

## PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

## PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

**Note:** When the front or rear park aid presents a fault message, the side parking aid also disables.

# Parking Aids

---

Message	Action
Check Front Park Aid	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Rear Park Aid	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.

# 360 Degree Camera

## WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras which provide visibility around your vehicle.

## HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 Degree Camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

# 360 Degree Camera

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

**Note:** Use caution if a door is ajar. The 360 degree camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

## LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

### Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the liftgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

### Front View Camera

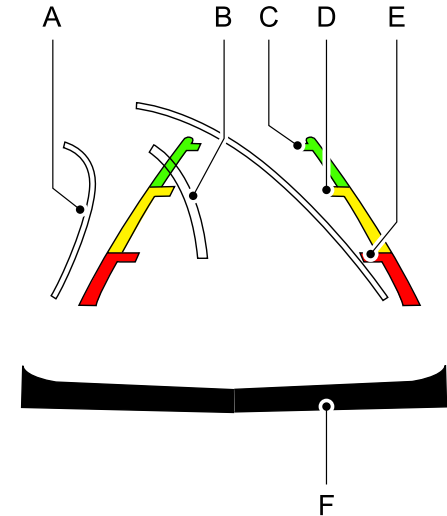
The front view camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

### Side View Camera

The side view camera is on the outside mirror. It provides a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**Note:** Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.

# 360 Degree Camera

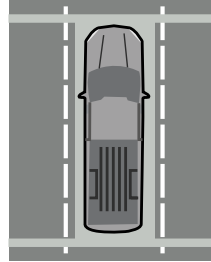
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

## Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

## 360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

### SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel and allows you to toggle the front camera on or off. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

**Note:** *The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.*

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), only the front images display when you press the button. When in reverse (R), only the rear images display when you press the button.

**Note:** *The 360 degree camera system turns off when your vehicle is in motion at low speed, except when in reverse (R).*

# 360 Degree Camera

## SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press to access the different camera views.



Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.



Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.



Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



The hitch view provides an image of the area around the tow hitch.



Trailer reverse guidance shows the sides of your truck and trailer. See **Trailer Reverse Guidance** (page 375).



Zooms in on the image and park hold is activated. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 345).



Zooms in on the 360 degree image. Also provides access to corner zoom views and front and rear offset views with tire guidelines depending on what gear and which drive mode you are in.

**Note:** *The rear normal view and hitch view are available when your vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).*



# Active Park Assist

## WHAT IS ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Assists you with parking in and out of parking spaces.

## HOW DOES ACTIVE PARK ASSIST WORK

Active park assist uses sensors to detect parking spaces. The system steers, accelerates, brakes and shifts gears as necessary to maneuver into or out of a parking space.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

## SWITCHING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button, then press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen to bring up full screen notifications.

Press the soft keys on the touchscreen to switch between the parallel park in, perpendicular park in, or parallel park out parking modes.

## Cancelling Active Park Assist

To cancel parking assistance at any time, shift out of neutral (N).

## Pausing Active Park Assist

To pause parking assistance at any time, release the parking aid button.

If you open the passenger or rear doors, active park assist pauses.

To resume parking, press and hold the parking aid button again.

# Active Park Assist

## ENTERING A PARALLEL PARKING SPACE

1. Press the parking aid button.

**Note:** *The system detects other vehicles and curbs to find a parking space.*

2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

**Note:** *If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.*

4. Drive your vehicle approximately 3 ft (1 m) away from and parallel to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a suitable parking space.*

5. Press and hold the brake pedal.

6. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
7. Press and hold the parking aid button.
8. Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to park.

**Note:** *You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.*

**Note:** *When parallel parking between objects, the system parks closer to the object in front of your vehicle to allow easier access to the luggage compartment.*

**Note:** *When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).*

## ENTERING A PERPENDICULAR PARKING SPACE

1. Press the parking aid button.

**Note:** *Active park assist does not recognize parking space lines and centers your vehicle between objects.*

2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select perpendicular parking.

4. Use the turn signal lever to search for a parking space on the driver or passenger side of your vehicle.

**Note:** *If you do not use the turn signal lever, the system searches for a parking space on the passenger side of your vehicle.*

5. Drive your vehicle approximately 3 ft (1 m) away from and perpendicular to the other parked vehicles when searching for a parking space.

**Note:** *A tone sounds and a message appears in the information and entertainment display when active park assist finds a parking space.*

6. Press and hold the brake pedal.
7. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).
8. Press and hold the parking aid button.
9. Release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to park.

**Note:** *Active park assist backs your vehicle into parking spaces.*

# Active Park Assist

**Note:** Active park assist aligns the front end of your vehicle with the lane side of the object next to it.

**Note:** When the system detects only one object, it allows enough distance to open the door on either side.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

**Note:** When parking is complete, your vehicle shifts into park (P).

## EXITING A PARKING SPACE

Active park assist only assists leaving parallel parking spaces.

1. Press the parking aid button.
2. Press the active park assist icon on the touchscreen.
3. Select parallel park exit.
4. Use the turn signal to choose the direction to exit the parking space.
5. Press and hold the brake pedal.
6. Release the steering wheel and shift into neutral (N).

7. Release the parking brake.
8. Press and hold the parking aid button.
9. Release the brake pedal to allow your vehicle to move.

**Note:** After active park assist drives your vehicle to a position where you can exit the parking space in a forward movement, a message appears instructing you to take full control of your vehicle.

10. Take control of your vehicle.

**Note:** You can slow down your vehicle at any time by pressing the brake pedal.

## ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Active Park Fault	The system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### ACTIVE PARK ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does active park assist not operate correctly?

The system is unable to detect a vehicle, curb or object to park next to or in between. The system needs boundary objects to operate correctly.

#### Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?

You have switched traction control off.

# Active Park Assist

---

## **Why does active park assist not search for a parking space?**

The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

The sensors could be blocked. For example, snow, ice or large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors can affect how the system functions.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

The sensors in the front or rear bumper could be damaged.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

The parking space is more than 5 ft (1.5 m) or less than 2 ft (0.5 m) away from your vehicle.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

Your vehicle's speed is greater than 22 mph (35 km/h) for parallel parking or greater than 19 mph (30 km/h) for perpendicular parking.

## **Why does active park assist not offer a parking space?**

You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After you reconnect the battery you must drive your vehicle on a straight road for a short period of time.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from correctly aligning your vehicle.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

Vehicles or objects bordering the space could not be correctly parked.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

Your vehicle stopped too far past the parking space.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

The tires are not correctly installed or maintained. For example, using a spare tire, not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

A repair or alteration changed the detection capabilities.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

A parked vehicle has a high attachment. For example, a salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**

The parking space length, or position of parked objects, changes after your vehicle passes the space.

## **Why does active park assist not correctly position the vehicle into a parking space?**


The temperature around your vehicle quickly changes. For example, driving from a heated garage into a cold outside temperature, or after leaving a car wash.


# Adaptive Cruise Control


## HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK


Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.


## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.


 **WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

## When Following a Vehicle

 **WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

### Sensor Limitations

**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

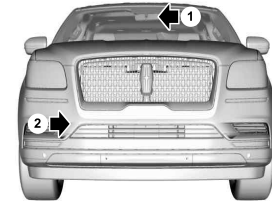
**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor.

The camera is on the windshield behind the interior mirror.

The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

**Note:** *You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.*

# Adaptive Cruise Control

---

**Note:** *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See

**Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 284).

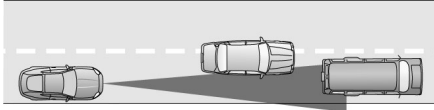
The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.



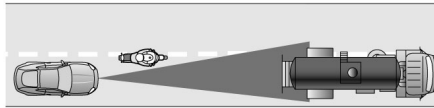
# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Detection Issues Can Occur:

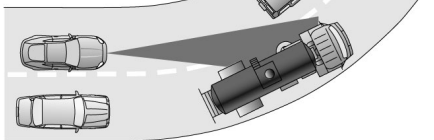
**A**



**B**



**C**



- A** When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.

- B** With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C** There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode. When you are below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units, adaptive cruise control does not activate unless you are following another vehicle.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after adaptive cruise control stops your vehicle.
- Adaptive cruise control holds your vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.

**SET+**

Press either button to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display when initially activating adaptive cruise control.



After a few seconds, the graphic in the instrument cluster display changes to show that adaptive cruise control is active.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer can vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

**SET+**

Press the SET+ or SET- buttons while keeping the brake pedal fully depressed.

**SET-**

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** The system activates from a complete stop only when it detects a lead vehicle in close proximity.

## Manually Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press the button to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the desired speed.

**SET-**

Press the button to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the desired speed.

You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press either button to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system could apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

**Note:** *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest	Sport
2	Close	Normal
3	Medium	Normal
4	Far	Comfort

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

## Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

**Note:** *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

**Note:** *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the information display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

The vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

**Note:** *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop (If Equipped)

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than a few seconds, an indicator and message displays.



Message	Action
Stopped	Cruise control does not resume automatically when this display is active.
Press button to resume	If the lead vehicle begins to move, you are prompted to press the resume button.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
	Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Auto-Resume	Displays when on a limited access highway after following a vehicle to a complete stop. In this situation, your vehicle resumes following the lead vehicle without a button press or pressing the accelerator pedal. The system can remain in auto-resume state for approximately 30 seconds, after which it no longer automatically resumes.

## OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

## SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal Cruise Control**.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## LANE CENTERING

### HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

**Note:** *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

### LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 270).

### LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in your information and entertainment screen. See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 301).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.
- The steering sensor detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

**Note:** *If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system will remain in standby until valid line markings are available.*

## LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 271).

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too small.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.

- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 279).

**Note:** *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

## SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

Keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

**Note:** *The correct requirements must be met before you can switch the system on. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 279).*

## Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Lane Centering Assist**.

## LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.



# Adaptive Cruise Control

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react appropriately to the warnings the adaptive cruise control with lane centering system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 281).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane line markings without detected steering activity.

**Note:** *The system could detect a light grip or light touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

## LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are on the steering wheel, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system slows the vehicle while maintaining steering assistance when lane markings are available. When no lane markings are available, the vehicle comes to a stop.



If your vehicle starts to slow down after system cancellation, you must take full control of the vehicle. To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation, press and release the resume button.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

**Note:** *If your vehicle slows down due to your inactivity twice within a key cycle, the system disables. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.*

## LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering will cancel:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button is switched off on the steering wheel.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Green status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber status with an audible tone, that then changes to gray status, indicates a system automatic cancellation.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

### HOW DOES INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

[Lincoln Co-Pilot 360 and 360+](#)

Intelligent adaptive cruise control combines speed sign recognition with adaptive cruise control to adjust the cruise set speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system detects new speed signs, the set speed updates.

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. The intelligent adaptive cruise control system and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition** (page 332).

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally.*

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

Traffic sign recognition must be enabled for intelligent adaptive cruise control to be active.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

**Note:** *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

## SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Speed Sign Recognition**.

## ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive Cruise Control**.
5. Press **Speed Sign Recognition**.
6. Press **Tolerance**.
7. Use + and - to set the tolerance.

**Note:** *You cannot set the tolerance more than 20 mph (30 km/h) above or below the recognized speed.*

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ALERTS

If you increase the set speed beyond the speed limit or speed limit plus a positive tolerance value, the set speed indicator flashes.

The warning does not occur if:

- You override the set speed using the accelerator pedal.
- The vehicle speed exceeds the set speed due to being on a downhill slope.

## INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



The set speed limit displays above the detected speed limit in the instrument cluster.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: LANE CENTERING

**Note:** The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Action
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	Return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane Centering Assist Not Available	To reset the feature when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park and turn the vehicle off. Restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume Control	You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying foot pressure on the accelerator pedal. You can also resume the feature by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

# Adaptive Cruise Control

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: STOP AND GO

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

**Note:** The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging.
Front Sensor Not Aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this. Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Active Adaptive Braking Off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

## WHAT IS ACTIVEGLIDE™

### Lincoln ActiveGlide Driver-Assist Technology

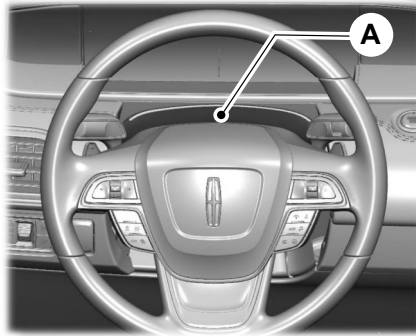
ActiveGlide keeps your vehicle centered in the lane and offers a hands-free driving mode in certain situations when using adaptive cruise control.

## HOW DOES ACTIVEGLIDE™ WORK

ActiveGlide uses cameras to monitor your vehicle position within a lane and applies steering support to keep your vehicle centered in the lane.

Using the cameras and location information, ActiveGlide allows you to remove your hands from the steering wheel and offers a hands-free driving mode in certain areas.

When active, ActiveGlide uses a driver facing camera and infrared lighting to monitor your eyes and head position to detect if you are distracted. If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road.



A Lighting and camera area.



Steering column too high, camera cannot see the face.



Appropriate position, camera can see the face.

For the most optimal experience from the driver facing camera:

- Make sure to not wear any facial coverings.
- Raise the seating position and/or lower the steering column so your face is seen by the driver facing camera.
- Avoid leaning the seat back so the driver facing camera can see your face.
- Avoid using infrared blocking sunglasses.
- Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not blocking the driver facing camera.

**Note:** When ActiveGlide is active, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, camera data may record through the vehicle event data recorder. See **Event Data** (page 26).

**Note:** No data records under normal driving conditions.

### ACTIVEGLIDE™ PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for keeping your eyes on the road at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Obstructions to the driver facing camera or infrared lighting could prevent the system from properly operating. Keep the camera and lighting areas free from obstruction. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system attempts to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane as well as maintain speed and gap control. The system may not be able to perform these tasks in all situations. Do not use the system in complex or uncertain driving conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Your vehicle could drift out of the lane of travel. Always be prepared to manually steer your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

## ACTIVEGLIDE™ REQUIREMENTS

ActiveGlide only activates when all of the following occur:

- ActiveGlide is enabled in your touchscreen. See **ActiveGlide™ Settings** (page 289).
- Adaptive cruise control is on.
- The system detects both lane markings.
- Your hands are on the steering wheel.
- Your eyes are on the road.

**Note:** The system must meet certain location requirements for the hands-free mode of ActiveGlide to work.

**Note:** The system may require software updates for hands-free mode. See **Vehicle System Reset** (page 523).

## ACTIVEGLIDE™ LIMITATIONS

Any of the following conditions could result in ActiveGlide not operating correctly:

- You do not have your vehicle centered in the lane.
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- You have limited steering input.
- Using the system in areas under construction.
- If you make any aftermarket modifications to the steering system.
- When using a spare tire.



The driver-facing camera may not operate correctly due to any of the following:

- If you have a pre-existing eye condition, such as an eye misalignment, or have had eye surgery.
- You cover your facial features by a mask, hat or other items.
- The lighting conditions change significantly.
- You are not in the field of view of the camera.
- You position or tilt yourself to one side.
- You are moving around extensively.
- You are wearing glasses or sunglasses that are too dark or reflective.

**Note:** *The system has limited steering assistance and may not be sufficient for all driving situations.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, such as inclement weather or direct sunlight, the system could deviate from the center line.*

**Note:** *The information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.*

## ACTIVEGLIDE™ SETTINGS

### Enabling ActiveGlide

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive Cruise Control**.
5. Press **Lane Centering with Hands-Free**.

### Enabling Activation Prompts

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive Cruise Control**.
5. Press **Activation Prompts**.

## SWITCHING ACTIVEGLIDE™ ON AND OFF

### Switching ActiveGlide On

The controls are on the steering wheel.

### Using Activation Prompts



When the prompt appears, press the button to switch ActiveGlide on.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

**Note:** *You must enable activation prompts in the touchscreen.*

### Using Steering Wheel Controls



Using the adaptive cruise control and lateral support buttons, make sure both systems are active. ActiveGlide activates.



### Switching ActiveGlide Off



Press either the lateral support or adaptive cruise control button when system is active or in standby mode.



ActiveGlide turns off through each ignition cycle.

## ACTIVEGLIDE™ ALERTS

When ActiveGlide is providing hands-on driving or transitioning to hands-on driving from hands-free driving and detects no steering activity for a certain period of time, the system alerts you with a message in the instrument cluster to put your hands on the steering wheel. After the first alert, the system alerts you with a message in the instrument cluster and an audible warning.

When ActiveGlide is providing hands-on or hands-free driving and detects you are not looking at the road for a certain period of time, the system alerts you to return your eyes to the road. Depending on where you are looking, the alert can be a message in the instrument cluster and an audible warning.

If you do not react to the warnings, ActiveGlide cancels, quickly activates and releases the brakes, and slows your vehicle down to low speeds while maintaining steering control.

If your vehicle slows down and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

**Note:** *If the system detects repeated inactivity, it disables until the next key cycle.*

## ACTIVEGLIDE™ AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels ActiveGlide, for example, no lane markings available, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster.



If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must take control of steering and press and release the button to reactivate ActiveGlide.

System cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.

- Lane markings cross.
- Your eyes are not on the road or your hands are not the steering wheel.

If you have your hands on the steering wheel and your eyes are on the road when the feature is active and a cancellation occurs, the system sounds a tone and displays a cancelled graphic in the instrument cluster.

If you are not paying attention to the road or your hands are not on the steering wheel and a cancellation occurs, the system displays a message and a tone sounds until you resume control. If you do not resume control in time, ActiveGlide quickly activates and releases the brakes, and slows your vehicle down to low speeds while maintaining steering control. If your vehicle slows down and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

**Note:** *The system disables until the next key cycle if it detects repeated inactivity.*

## ACTIVEGLIDE™ INDICATORS



When on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the status.

Gray indicates ActiveGlide is on but inactive.

Green indicates ActiveGlide is active and applying continuous steering support.

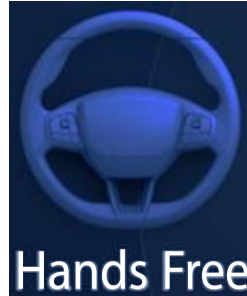
Blue indicates ActiveGlide is active and hands-free driving mode is available.

### Hands-On Driving Support Available



When this indicator is present, you must keep your hands on the steering wheel.

### Hands-Free Driving Support Available



A graphic in the instrument cluster of a steering wheel without hands indicates the hands-free driving mode is available.

When this indicator is present, you can remove your hands from the steering wheel.

## ACTIVEGLIDE™ – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ACTIVEGLIDE™ – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Message	Details
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Resume Control	The system is going to cancel and you must take control.
Watch the Road	Return your attention to the road.
ActiveGlide not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Press the accelerator pedal and follow the prompts.
Driver monitor camera cannot detect face See manual	Make sure your facial features are visible and in the field of view of the driver facing camera. It is possible that the steering column is positioned too high or low for the driver facing camera to see you, adjust the steering column or seat so your face is in the field of view.
Driver monitor camera is blocked See manual	Make sure your hands, arms or other objects are not obscuring the camera.

ActiveGlide™ (If Equipped)

Message	Details
Driver monitor camera fault See manual	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. If the message continues to display, have the system checked as soon as possible.
ActiveGlide On Watch the road Be prepared to resume control	ActiveGlide is active, keep your attention on the road.
ActiveGlide available Press {ICON} to activate	The system is in standby mode, press the button on the steering wheel to activate.

**Note:** *The instrument cluster display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending on which cluster type you have.*

# Drive Mode Control

---

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

## HOW DOES DRIVE MODE CONTROL WORK

Drive mode control adjusts your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

Changing the drive mode adjusts the steering effort and feel of the steering system.

The stability and traction control assist your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high-performance driving.

Throttle control enhances the powertrain response, transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules, and four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.

Changing the drive mode can engage or disengage the electronic locking differentials.

Changing the drive mode changes the four-wheel drive mode to the default setting for the selected drive mode.

**Note:** *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.*

**Note:** *The system reverts to the normal mode each time you start your vehicle. At startup the system also displays a prompt on the instrument cluster display that gives you the option to return to the previously selected drive mode during the last ignition cycle. If you select yes, the system returns to the last selected drive mode and the default driveline settings associated with that mode. If you select no, the system remains in normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as selected in the prior ignition cycle. If you do not select yes or no, the system stays in normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as selected in the prior ignition cycle.*

# Drive Mode Control

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



Rotate the drive mode control on the center console to select or change a drive mode.

**Note:** Button icons vary depending on the vehicle.

## DRIVE MODES

### CONSERVE - 4X4

For efficient driving. It helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and increases driving range.

Two-wheel drive high is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low is not available in conserve mode.

The electronic locking differential is available below 25 mph (40 km/h). See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

### CONSERVE - 4X2

For efficient driving. It helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and increases driving range.

The electronic locking differential is available below 25 mph (40 km/h). See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

## DEEP CONDITIONS - 4X4

Used for crossing terrain that has deformable deep, rutted surfaces such as mud, deep snow or deep sand. Do not use on dry, hard surfaced roads.

Four-wheel drive high is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low is selectable in deep conditions mode.

The electronic locking differential engages when you select this mode at any speed, and you can disengage it at any time using the button. See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

**Note:** *Do not use this mode when driving on pavement or packed snow. This could cause driveline bind up and damage the system depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection. See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 224).*

## DEEP CONDITIONS - 4X2

Used for crossing terrain that has deformable deep, rutted surfaces such as mud, deep snow or deep sand. Do not use on dry, hard surfaced roads.

# Drive Mode Control

---

Four-wheel drive auto is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low is selectable in deep conditions mode.

The electronic locking differential engages when you select this mode at any speed, and you can disengage it at any time using the button. See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

**Note:** *Do not use this mode when driving on pavement or packed snow. This could cause driveline bind up and damage the system depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection. See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 224).*

## EXCITE - 4X4

For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases throttle response, provides a sportier steering feel, along with quicker shifting. The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control. The transmission also holds gears longer, helping your vehicle accelerate faster when shifting gears.

Two-wheel drive high is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low is not available in excite mode.

The electronic locking differential is available below 25 mph (40 km/h). See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

## EXCITE - 4X2

For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases throttle response, provides a sportier steering feel, along with quicker shifting. The suspension stiffens, with an emphasis on handling and control. The transmission also holds gears longer, helping your vehicle accelerate faster when shifting gears.

The electronic locking differential is available below 25 mph (40 km/h). See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

## NORMAL - 4X4

For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience.

Two-wheel drive high is the default four-wheel drive mode. All four-wheel drive modes are selectable when in normal mode.

The electronic locking differential is available below 25 mph (40 km/h). See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

## NORMAL - 4X2

For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience.

The electronic locking differential is available below 25 mph (40 km/h). See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).



# Drive Mode Control

---

## **NORMAL 4A - 4X4** (If Equipped)

For general on-road driving. Use this mode on normal firm surfaces such as dry or wet pavement and hard packed dirt or gravel roads. Delivers power to all four wheels, as required.

Four-wheel drive auto is the default four-wheel drive mode. All four-wheel drive modes are selectable when in normal 4A mode.

The electronic locking differential is available below 25 mph (40 km/h). See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

## **SLIPPERY - 4X4**

For less than ideal road conditions, such as snow or ice covered roads. Slippery mode inspires confidence without taking away from driving pleasure. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

Four-wheel drive high is the default four-wheel drive mode. Two-wheel drive high is not available in slippery mode.

The electronic locking differential is available below 25 mph (40 km/h). See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

**Note:** *Do not use this mode when driving on dry pavement. This could cause driveline bind up and damage the system depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection. See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 224).*

## **SLIPPERY - 4X2**

For less than ideal road conditions, such as snow or ice covered roads. Slippery mode inspires confidence without taking away from driving pleasure. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

Four-wheel drive auto is the default four-wheel drive mode. Two-wheel drive high is not available in slippery mode.

The electronic locking differential is available below 25 mph (40 km/h). See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

**Note:** *Do not use this mode when driving on dry pavement. This could cause driveline bind up and damage the system depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection. See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 224).*

## **SLOW CLIMB** (If Equipped)

Used when you need extra power, such as when climbing steep grades, going through deep sand or pulling a boat out of a launch ramp.

Four-wheel drive low is the only four-wheel drive mode available in slow climb mode.

The electronic locking differential engages when you select this mode at any speed, and you can disengage it at any time using the button. See **What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential** (page 230).

# Drive Mode Control

**Note:** : Do not use this mode when driving on pavement or packed snow. This could cause driveline bind up and damage the system depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection. See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 224).

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVE MODE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Selected 4x4 Mode Not Available in Current Drive Mode	You have selected a four-wheel drive mode that is not available in the current drive mode. Select an available four-wheel drive mode.

## **DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why did the system default to normal mode?**

If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

# Lane Keeping System

## WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

[\*Lincoln Co-Pilot 360 and 360+\*](#)

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

## HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the travel lane.

When the camera detects a drift out of the travel lane, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the travel lane.

The driver can select one of three modes:

- Alert (If Equipped)
- Aid
- Alert + Aid

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

# Lane Keeping System

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 40 mph (64 km/h).

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking.

**Note:** When you select Aid or Alert and Aid mode and the system detects no steering activity for a short period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the turn signal on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (64 km/h).

- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.
- Entering or exiting a tight curve when driving at high speeds.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button again.

**Note:** When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information and entertainment display to show the status.

**Note:** The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed, unless it detects a MyKey™. If the system detects a MyKey™, it defaults to the last setting for that MyKey™.

**Note:** If the system detects a MyKey™, pressing the button does not affect the on or off status of the system. You can only change the mode and intensity settings.

## SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

The lane keeping system has different settings that you can view or adjust using the information display.

The system stores the last known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you switch on the system.

# Lane Keeping System

To change the lane keeping system mode, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Lane-Keeping Mode**.
5. Select a mode.

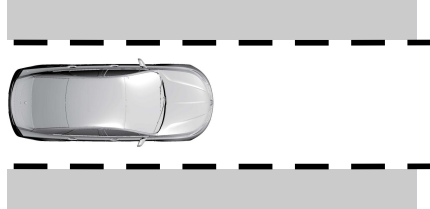
**Note:** *The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle. If the system detects a MyKey™, it defaults to the last setting for that MyKey™.*

## ALERT MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode vibrates the steering wheel when it detects an unintended lane departure.

### HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel. The intensity of the vibration is set through the lane keeping system menu.

### ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL VIBRATION INTENSITY

To change the steering wheel vibration intensity, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.

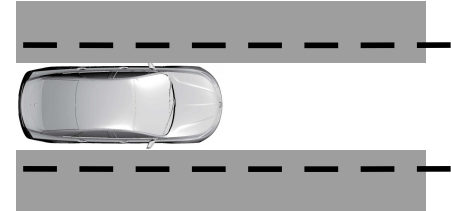
4. Press **Lane-Keeping Intensity**.
5. Select an intensity setting.

## AID MODE

### WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

### HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



# Lane Keeping System

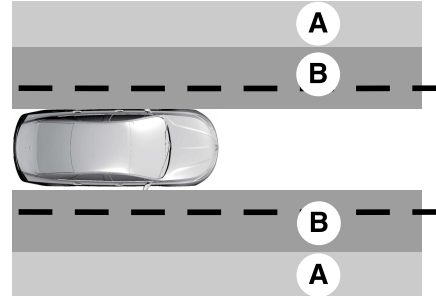
The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

## ALERT AND AID MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far out of the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

### HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

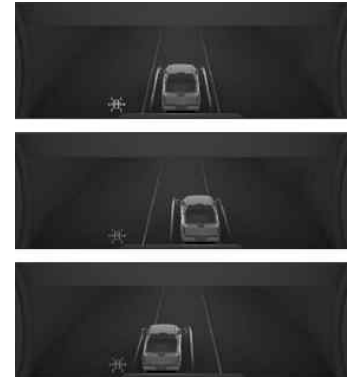


A Alert.

B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicle enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

### LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the information display.

When you switch the system off, the lane marking graphics do not display.

**Note:** The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.

# Lane Keeping System

While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray	Green	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It may help you identify adjacent vehicles during a lane change.

Blind spot assist provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance to help during lane changes.

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

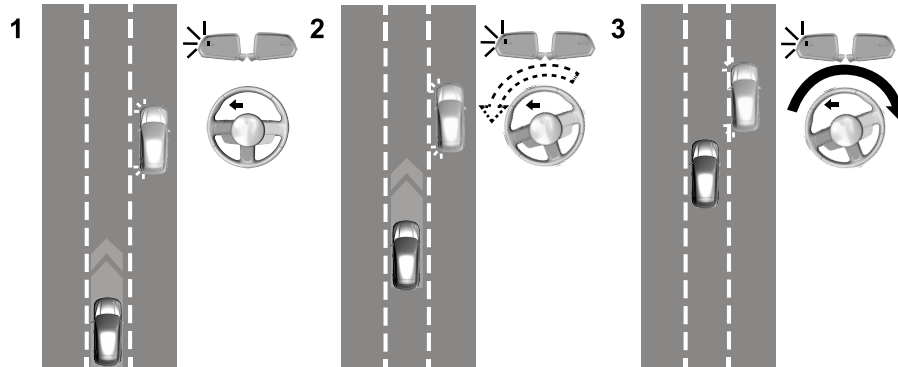


# Lane Keeping System

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a speed higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather obstructing the sensors.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



# Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or red lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 311).

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It may help you identify adjacent vehicles during a lane change.

Blind spot assist provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance to help during lane changes.

When attaching a trailer, ensure you have properly set up the trailer coverage settings. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 313).

### HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If a supported trailer is connected, the function is reduced to only detecting vehicles on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 313).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of direction indicators and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- The system does not detect lane markings.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- You have not configured the attached trailer correctly in the trailer tow menus or you attached an unsupported trailer. The system only supports certain trailer shapes and dimensions.

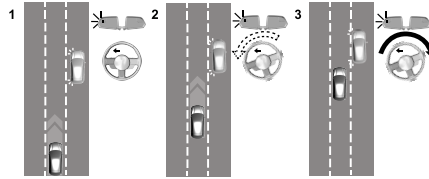
**Note:** *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if any of the above limitations are present.*

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

# Lane Keeping System

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

## BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS



The lane keeping aid warning lamp or red lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 311).

## Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle with the blind spot information system switched off or you have not configured the trailer.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if your blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.
Front Camera Fault Service Required	Front camera fault. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.

# Lane Keeping System

---

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

# Lane Keeping System

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Your vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
Your vehicle stays too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
Driving at high speeds in curves.
The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
Sudden offset in lane markings.
ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
There is standing water on the road.
Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.

# Lane Keeping System

**Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?**

Lane width is too narrow or too wide.

You have not calibrated the camera after a windshield replacement.

Driving on tight or on uneven roads.

**Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?**

High cross winds are present.

There is a large road crown.

Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.

Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.

You changed the tires or modified the suspension.

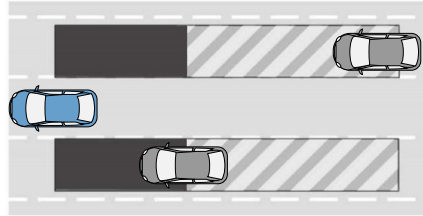
# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 59 ft (18 m) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 mph (48 km/h) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**Note:** *Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

**Note:** For vehicles without blind spot information system with trailer coverage, aftermarket trailer tow modules or tow bars may interfere with the system. In this situation it is recommended that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by the manufacturer, the system automatically turns off when you attach a trailer.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

## SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

To switch blind spot information system on or off, use the touchscreen:

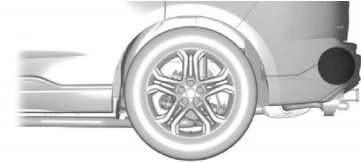
1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Blind Spot Information System**.
4. Switch the feature on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear fascia on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

**Note:** Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

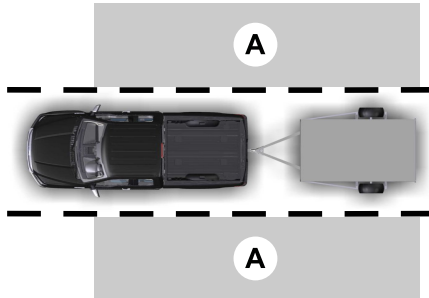


# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

If the sensors become blocked, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages** (page 316). The alert indicators illuminate but the system does not alert you.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

### WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Trailer coverage only supports conventional trailers. The system turns off if you select a fifth wheel trailer type.

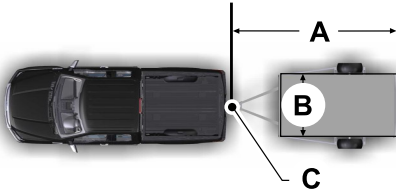
Make sure the trailer width is less than or equal to 8.5 ft (2.6 m) and the length is less than 33 ft (10.1 m). If you input values higher, the system turns off.

Some trailers could cause a slight change in system performance:

- Large box trailers could cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructures or near parked cars. A false alert could also occur while making a 90-degree turn.
- Trailers that have a width greater than 8.5 ft (2.6 m) at the front and have a total length greater than 20 ft (6 m) could cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speeds.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 8.5 ft (2.6 m) at the front could cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or v-nose box trailers with a width greater than 8.5 ft (2.6 m) at the front could cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

## Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

### SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch ball.

You can set-up a trailer to work with the blind spot information system through the touchscreen. When setting up a trailer, a sequence of screens appear asking for trailer information.

1. Select type of trailer screen - conventional, fifth wheel or gooseneck.

**Note:** The system only supports conventional trailers.

2. Do you want to set up blind spot with trailer screen? If no, the system turns off. If yes, the menu goes to the next screen.
3. Is the width less than 9 ft (2.7 m) and length less than 33 ft (10.1 m)? If no, the system turns off. If yes, the menu goes to the next screen.
4. Trailer width measurement. Measure the width at the front of the trailer. It is not measured at the widest point of the trailer. The maximum width at the front of the trailer the system can support is 8.5 ft (2.6 m).

**Note:** You do not need to enter an exact trailer width measurement. You only need to confirm that the width of the trailer is less than 9 ft (2.7 m).

5. Trailer length measurement. The trailer length is the distance between the trailer hitch ball and the rear of the trailer. The maximum length that the system can support is 33 ft (10.1 m).

6. Enter the length of trailer. The default setting is 18 ft (5.5 m). Toggling up or down using the menu buttons increases or decreases the measurement by 1 ft (0.3 m). Select a length that is equal to or within 1 ft (0.3 m) of the actual measured length. For example, if the actual measure length is 23 ft (7 m), toggle the length in the menu to 24 ft (7.2 m). The system setup saves when you enter the length of the trailer.

**Note:** If the trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with electrical lighting, enter a length of around 3 ft (1 m). Cross traffic alert remains on for trailers with a length of 3 ft (1 m) or less.

**Note:** The system requires proper measurement and measure entry to function properly.

# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

## SELECTING A TRAILER

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the trailer set up menu appears in the touchscreen. This menu allows you to set up a new trailer or choose from a previously set up trailer. A warning message appears and the system turns off if you do not choose or add a new trailer.

**Note:** *The warning message may not appear until your vehicle reaches 22 mph (35 km/h).*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When blind spot information system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signal on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Blind Spot System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Blind Spot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.
Blind Spot Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to the vehicle that does not have a trailer blind spot system or when you switch the trailer blind spot system off through the touchscreen.

**Note:** When connecting a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and turn the system OFF. If the system does not turn OFF automatically, switch the blind spot information system OFF manually. If equipped with blind spot with trailer tow, you will be prompted to set up a trailer that allows the feature to function with that trailer.

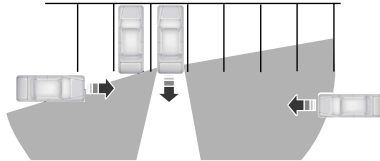
# Cross Traffic Alert

## WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

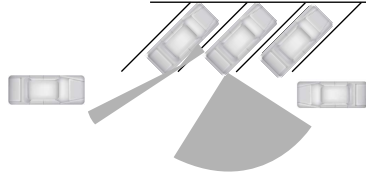
The system alerts you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

## HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross traffic alert detects vehicles that approach at a speed between 4–37 mph (6–60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

**Note:** *Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

# Cross Traffic Alert

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 4 mph (6 km/h) or greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

## Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer tow under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 3 ft (1 m).
- You set the trailer length to 3 ft (1 m) in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by the manufacturer, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.*

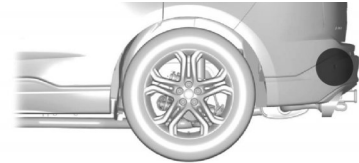
## SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

To switch cross traffic alert on or off use the touchscreen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

**Note:** *The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on. To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.*

## LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear fascia on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.*

# Cross Traffic Alert

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

**Note:** Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the cross traffic alert detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a warning lamp illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the information display to show which side the vehicle is approaching from.

If the system malfunctions, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If arrows do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** In some conditions, the system could alert you, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

# Cross Traffic Alert

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Cross Traffic Alert	Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Indicates blocked cross traffic alert system sensors. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

**Note:** When connecting a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and turn the system OFF. If the system does not turn OFF automatically, switch the cross traffic alert system OFF manually.



# Pre-Collision Assist

## WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. The system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision if your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian or cyclist within your driving path.

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake Support.

### 3. Automatic Emergency Braking.



**Alert:** When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

**Brake Support:** The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

**Automatic Emergency Braking:** Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.

**Note:** *If you perceive the pre-collision assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity. Setting the low sensitivity would result in fewer and later warnings of a potential forward collision. The manufacturer recommends using the high sensitivity setting where possible.*

**Note:** *Automatic emergency braking performance is not affected by the sensitivity setting.*

Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 322).

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

## Pre-Collision Assist



**WARNING:** The system does not detect vehicles moving in a different direction or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



**WARNING:** The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.



**WARNING:** System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds,

running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 324).

The system is active at 3 mph (5 km/h) and above.

**Note:** *The pre-collision assist system automatically disables when you select four-wheel drive low or manually disable AdvanceTrac™.*

# Pre-Collision Assist

**Note:** *Brake support and automatic emergency braking are active at speeds up to 80 mph (130 km/h). If your vehicle has a radar sensor included with adaptive cruise control, then brake support and automatic emergency braking are active up to the maximum speed of your vehicle.*

## Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

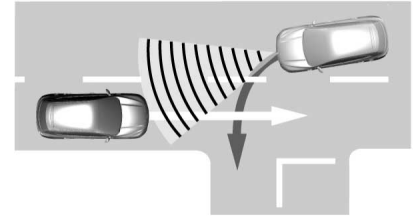
## Cyclist Detection Limitations

Cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).

Cyclist detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where cyclists are fast-moving, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

## Intersection Assist (If Equipped)

If your vehicle comes with a radar sensor included in adaptive cruise control, the pre-collision assist system may operate in a scenario where you are turning across an oncoming vehicle's path. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 19 mph (30 km/h).



## SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

You cannot switch the system off.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

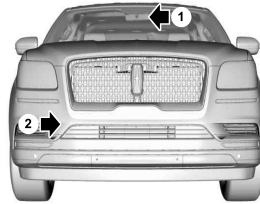
You can adjust the following settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu:

- Change alert and distance alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- Switch distance indication and alert on or off.
- If required, switch automatic emergency braking on or off.
- If required, switch evasive steering assist on or off.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist switches off.

## LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor (if equipped).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, something is obstructing the radar signals or camera images. The radar sensor is behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the system may not function, or performance may reduce. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages** (page 328).

**Note:** Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.

**Note:** If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

**Note:** If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message could display in the information display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor recalibrates successfully.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.

**Note:** *The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.*

## WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
62 mph (100 km/h).	Normal.	Blue.	Greater than 82 ft (25 m).	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	56–82 ft (17–25 m).	0.6-0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 56 ft (17 m).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

## SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

## DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

The indicator displays the time gap between your vehicle and vehicles traveling in the same direction ahead of you. The area in front your vehicle changes shape and color as the vehicle in front of you gets closer or farther away.

# Pre-Collision Assist

---

## DISTANCE ALERT

### WHAT IS DISTANCE ALERT

The system alerts you with a warning lamp if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

**Note:** *The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.*

### ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT

To adjust the sensitivity of the system, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting.

## AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help reduce impact damage to avoid the crash completely.

Automatic emergency braking is only available up to certain speeds. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 322).

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Auto Emergency Braking**.
5. Switch the feature on or off.

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

### WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

**Note:** *Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 321).*

# Pre-Collision Assist

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

**Note:** *Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.*

**Note:** *Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.*

## SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering** on or off.

**Note:** *If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.*

**Note:** *Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you switch the ignition on.*

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



A telltale illuminates in the cluster to indicate if the system is disabled or unavailable.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# Pre-Collision Assist

---

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Camera Troubleshooting

#### **The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.**

Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

#### **The windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.**

Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

### Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

#### **The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed.**

Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

#### **The surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.**

Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

#### **Heavy rain, spray or fog is interfering with the radar signals.**

The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

#### **Swirling water or snow or ice on the surface of the road could interfere with the radar signals.**

The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

#### **Radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact.**

Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

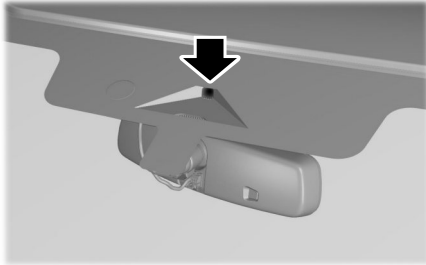
# Driver Alert

## WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT


Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.


## HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK


Driver Alert calculates your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors through use of the front camera sensor behind the interior mirror.





## DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.


 **WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** *If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.*

# Driver Alert

## DRIVER ALERT LIMITATIONS

Driver alert may not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

## SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

**Note:** *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

## Resetting Driver Alert

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Opening and closing the driver door when your vehicle is stationary, and it is safe to do so.

## DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Take a rest soon.

# Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

Speed sign recognition detects speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit. Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display.

## HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Speed sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect speed signs.

If your vehicle has speed sign recognition with navigation, stored speed sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by Ford, the system may not correctly function.

**Note:** The system may not detect all speed signs and may incorrectly read signs.

**Note:** Always fit our original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

Speed sign recognition may not operate correctly due to:

- Outdated map data.
- Incorrect recognition of speed limits by the sensor of signs on parallel roads or exit ramps.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty, or distorted signs.

## Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)

### SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, it appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *Sign indicator image may vary based on your vehicle's display type.*

### SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED WARNING

To set the speed warning, use the touchscreen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.

4. Switch the feature on or off.

### SETTING THE SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SPEED TOLERANCE

To set the tolerance of the speed warning, use the touchscreen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Press **Tolerance**.
5. Use the slider bar to select the required level.

# Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)

## SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traffic Sign Reduced Performance See Manual	The traffic sign data provided by the navigation system is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have the system checked as soon as possible.

# Speed Sign Recognition (If Equipped)

---

## **SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does the speed limit change without any sign on the road?**

The speed limit changes due to the speed limit data stored in the map data.


### **Why does speed sign recognition show a wrong speed limit?**


The system shows a wrong speed limit due to incorrect and outdated map data or due to incorrect recognition of the speed limits by the camera.


# Load Carrying


## LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS


Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.


 **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

 **WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

 **WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

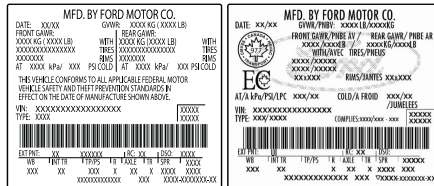
The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.



# Load Carrying

## LOCATING THE SAFETY COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATION LABELS

### Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



The Safety Compliance Certification label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING

### GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT RATING

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS COMBINED WEIGHT RATING

Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR) is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle. See **Recommended Towing Weights** (page 352).

# Load Carrying

## CALCULATING PAYLOAD

### Tire and Loading Label Information

#### Example:



#### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL : 5 FRONT: 2 REAR: 3

The combined weight of occupants, and cargo should never exceed **385 kg or 850 lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
SPARE	NONE	NONE	



#### TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT

SEATING CAPACITY NOMBRE DE PLACES TOTAL 5 FRONT AVANT 2 REAR ARRIERE 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 396 kg or 875 lbs.  
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser 396 kg ou 875 lbs.

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
REAR ARRIERE	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80R16 97M	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

## CALCULATING THE LOAD LIMIT

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

## Load Carrying

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

### Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you

have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 -$

$198 - 540 = -103$  kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

# Load Carrying

## ROOF RACK

### ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

**Note:** *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

### ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES


Description	Maximum Recommended Load
Vehicles with a moonroof.	100 lb (45 kg)
Vehicles without a moonroof.	175 lb (79 kg)


**Note:** *The maximum roof load is based on evenly distributing the load on the crossbars.*


**Note:** *When using a roof rack system, you must subtract the weight of the roof rack system from the maximum recommended load to determine your actual maximum cargo load. See the roof rack system manufacturer for more information.*


# Luggage Compartment


## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.


 **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

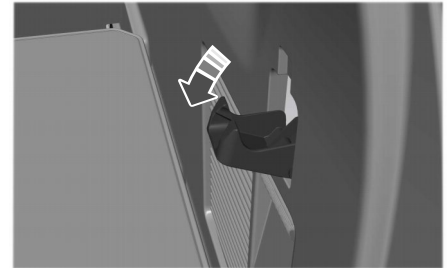
 **WARNING:** Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

**Note:** When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.

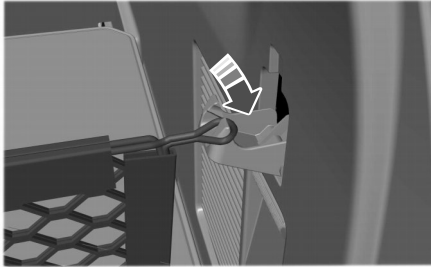
## INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT CARGO NET

 **WARNING:** This net is not designed to restrain objects during a collision or heavy braking.

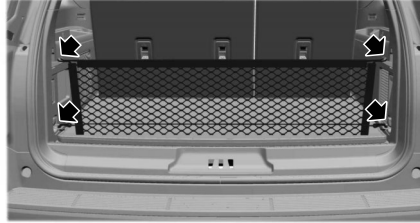


1. Fold down the hooks on the top of the rear quarter trim panel.

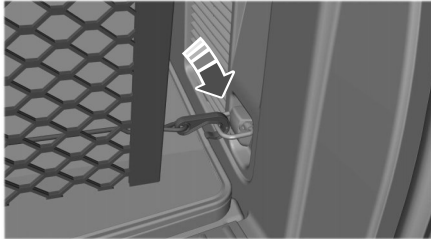
# Luggage Compartment



3. Attach the bottom of the net to the lower anchor point.



2. Attach the loop end of the net to the upper hook. Use one prong on the hook for the net attachment.



4. Repeat this procedure on the other side of your vehicle.

## ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT LOAD FLOOR

### Short Wheelbase Load Floor



Lift up on the handle to open the cover.

**Note:** The board operates with friction hinges. This allows you to put it in any position between a 0° and a 90° angle.



# Luggage Compartment

To close, lower the cover.

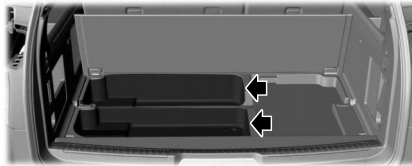
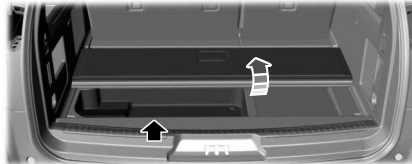
## Long Wheelbase Load Floor

The bi-folding load floor provides access to two separate storage compartments.



Lift up on the handle and fold it back to open the cover.

**Note:** The board operates with friction hinges. This allows you to put it in any position between a 0° and a 90° angle.



To access the second storage compartment, fold the cover back a second time.

To close, lower the cover.

## ADJUSTING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT DIVIDER

### Advanced Luggage Compartment Divider (If Equipped)

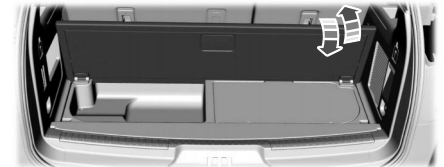


**WARNING:** Do not load any objects on the shelf that may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of the vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or collision.



**WARNING:** Do not place people or pets on or under the parcel shelf.

### Forward Divider

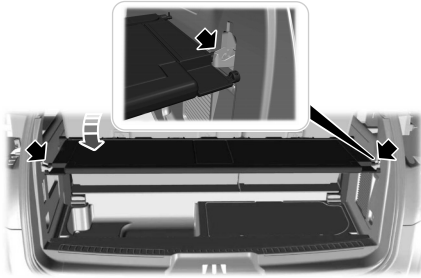


# Luggage Compartment

To move the board into the divider position, lift up on the handle and position the board vertically at a 90° angle.

**Note:** *The board operates with friction hinges. This allows you to put it in any position between a 0° and a 90° angle.*

## Cargo Shelf



To move the board into the shelf position, lift the board and move it to the horizontal position. Once the board is horizontal, insert the forward-facing nubs into the hooks on either side.

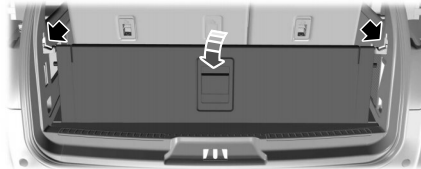
For the short wheelbase, it is necessary to raise up the second panel toward the front of the vehicle when you have the seats folded down.

For the long wheelbase, it is necessary to raise up the second panel toward the front of the vehicle.

**Note:** *Before moving the board into the shelf position, you may need to flip down the hooks.*

**Note:** *Do not put more than 50 lb (22 kg) on the shelf.*

## Rear Barrier (Bulkhead Position)



To move the board into the rear barrier or bulkhead position, lift the board and move it to the vertical position. Once the board is vertical, insert the rearward facing nubs into the hooks on either side.

**Note:** *Before moving the board into the rear barrier or bulkhead position, you may need to flip down the hooks.*



# Connecting a Trailer

## CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km).

Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.

See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.

Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 533).

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Account for the trailer coupler weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Do not exceed the load limits. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 533).

## HITCHES

### INSTALLING A HITCH

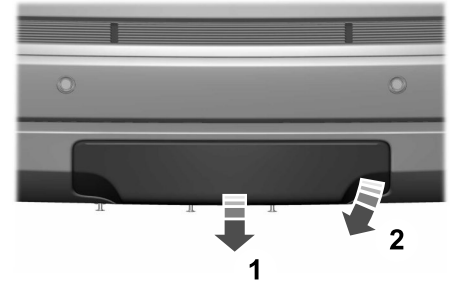


**WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10-15% of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue. Do not exceed the tongue load rating indicated on the hitch receiver.

### Trailer Hitch Cover

Your vehicle has a removable trailer hitch cover. To remove the trailer hitch cover:



1. Grab the trailer hitch cover at the bottom and pull towards the rear of the vehicle until the bottom of the trailer hitch cover unsnaps from the bumper.
2. Grab the trailer hitch cover at the edge and rotate until the top of the trailer hitch cover unsnaps from the bumper, then remove the trailer hitch cover.

To install the trailer hitch cover:

# Connecting a Trailer



A weight-distributing hitch helps distribute tongue load to all towing vehicle and trailer wheels. For more information, visit the links in the following table.

Market	Website
United States of America	<a href="https://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/">https://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/</a>
Canada	<a href="https://www.fleet.ford.ca/towing-guides/">https://www.fleet.ford.ca/towing-guides/</a>

## CONNECTING A TRAILER

### Recognizing a Trailer

1. Attach the trailer and wiring connector to your vehicle.
2. Switch on your vehicle.
3. Set up a profile for the trailer using the touchscreen.

**Note:** If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.

**Note:** Trailer profiles store trailer types, dimensions, preferences, trailer specific mileage and fuel economy.

**Note:** Disabling the trailer detection notification makes the default trailer profile active when a connection is detected.



When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

1. Line up the snaps on the trailer hitch cover to the holes on the bumper and push forward until it snaps into place.

### HOOKING UP A TRAILER USING A WEIGHT-DISTRIBUTING HITCH



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the spring bars so that your vehicle's rear bumper is higher than before attaching the trailer. Doing so will defeat the function of the weight-distributing hitch, which may cause unpredictable handling, and could result in serious personal injury.

# Connecting a Trailer

## Trailer Light Check



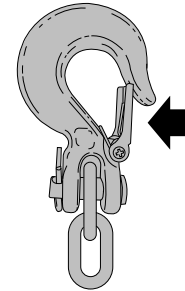
**WARNING:** Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Most towed vehicles require trailer lamps. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

## Safety Chains

Install trailer safety chains to the trailer hitch as recommended by the manufacturer. Cross the chains under the trailer coupler and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

**Note:** *Do not attach safety chains to the bumper. Always connect the safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of your trailer hitch.*



If the trailer safety chain hook has a latch, make sure to fully close the latch.

# Connecting a Trailer

## CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

## CONNECTING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Trailer Disconnected	The system senses a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Wiring Fault	There are certain faults in your vehicle wiring and trailer wiring or brake system.
Trailer Battery Not Charging See Manual	There is a fault with your trailer battery, or your trailer battery voltage is very low.
Trailer Tire Low Specified:	One or more tires on your trailer is below the specified tire pressure.
Trailer Tire Over Temperature	Displays when one or more tires on the trailer is above the recommended temperature.
Trailer Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A trailer tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The trailer tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system checked.
Trailer Tire Pressure Monitor Capability Not Detected	The system cannot detect the trailer tire pressure monitoring system.
Trailer Tire Pressure Indication Not Setup See Manual	The trailer tire pressure monitoring system is not setup.

# Towing a Trailer

## TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



**WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

## TRAILER BRAKE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.



**WARNING:** Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible aftermarket electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

# Towing a Trailer

---

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Certain states require functioning trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight.

Ford Motor Company recommends separate functioning brake systems for trailers weighing more than 1,500 lb (680 kg) when loaded.

## TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

The vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

**Note:** *Your vehicle could have reduced performance when operating at high altitudes and when heavily loaded or towing a trailer. When driving at elevation, to match driving performance as perceived at sea level, reduce gross vehicle weight and gross combination weight by 2% per 1,000 ft (300 m) elevation.*

## LOADING YOUR TRAILER

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.

- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight. The trailer tongue weight should never exceed 10% of the maximum towing capacity.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

## TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Periodically inspect these components during and after any towing operation.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight.

# Towing a Trailer

---

Your vehicle may have a temporary or conventional spare tire. A temporary spare tire is different in diameter or width, tread-type, or is from a different manufacturer than the road tires on your vehicle. Consult information on the tire label or Safety Compliance label for limitations when using.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the transmission in park (P) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off when you are towing on long, steep slopes.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not continuously apply the brakes, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission has Grade Assist or Tow/Haul, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Your vehicle has AdvanceTrac with roll stability control. When towing a trailer, additional loads could cause the AdvanceTrac system to engage during cornering maneuvers. Reduce cornering speeds to make sure that you can maintain control of the vehicle and trailer if the AdvanceTrac system engages.

- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and gradually brake.
- Avoid parking on a slope. However, if you must park on a slope, turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow, set the parking brake, place the transmission in park (P) and place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels.

**Note:** *Chocks are not included with your vehicle.*

## LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

# Towing a Trailer

Exceeding 6 in (15 cm) could allow water to enter vehicle components, causing internal damage to the components and affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

**Note:** *Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water.*

**Note:** *Disconnect the trailer wiring connector before backing the trailer into the water.*

**Note:** *Reconnect the trailer wiring connector after removing the trailer from the water.*

## TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

### RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Market	Website
United States of America	<a href="https://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/">https://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/</a>
Canada	<a href="https://www.fleet.ford.ca/towing-guides/">https://www.fleet.ford.ca/towing-guides/</a>



# Towing a Trailer

---

## WHAT IS THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT

The maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow.

## CALCULATING THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT FOR YOUR VEHICLE

1. Start with the gross combined weight rating for your vehicle model and axle ratio.

2. Subtract all of the following that apply to your vehicle:
  - Vehicle curb weight.
  - Hitch hardware weight, for example a draw bar, ball, locks or weight distributing hardware.
  - Driver weight.
  - Passenger weight.
  - Payload, cargo and luggage weight.
  - Aftermarket equipment weight.

This equals the maximum loaded trailer weight for this combination.

**Note:** *The trailer tongue load is considered part of the payload for your vehicle. Reduce the total payload by the final trailer tongue weight.*

**Note:** *Consult an authorized dealer to determine the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle if you are not sure.*

# Towing a Trailer

## TOWING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

## TOWING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trailer Left Turn Lamps Fault Check Lamps	The left-hand trailer turn lamp requires service.
Trailer Right Turn Lamps Fault Check Lamps	The right-hand trailer turn lamp requires service.
Trailer Battery Not Charging See Manual	The trailer battery voltage is too low to charge. If there is no trailer attached, the vehicle battery voltage is low.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	The system detects a short created by the trailer lamps. Inspect and repair the trailer wiring, or have the system checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Stop Lamps Fault Check Lamps	The trailer stoplamps require service.
Trailer brake system fault See manual	Verify the trailer brake connections are secure and that the aftermarket trailer brake controller device is correctly installed. Perform a trailer brake and trailer light check if possible. If the message persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer brake module fault	Perform a trailer brake and trailer light check if possible. If the message persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Sway Reduce Speed	The trailer sway control detects trailer sway. Reduce the vehicle's speed.

# Towing a Trailer

Message	Details
Trailer Tire Over Temperature	Displays when one or more tires on the trailer is above the recommended temperature.
Trailer Tire Low Specified:	One or more tires on your trailer is below the specified tire pressure.
Trailer Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A trailer tire pressure sensor requires service. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The trailer tire pressure monitoring system requires service. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Tire Pressure Monitor Capability Not Detected	The system cannot detect the trailer tire pressure monitoring system.
Trailer Tire Pressure Indication Not Setup See Manual	The trailer tire pressure monitoring system is not setup.

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER

The trailer brake controller assists in smooth and effective trailer braking based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

## INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use the integrated trailer brake controller to properly adjust the trailer brakes and check all connections before towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

- Only use the manual control lever for proper adjustment of the gain during trailer setup. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The trailer brake controller does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.
- The trailer brake controller is only a factory-installed or dealer-installed item. Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the controller due to misuse or customer installation.

**Note:** Do not attempt removal of the trailer brake controller without consulting the Workshop Manual. Damage to the unit may result.

**Note:** Make sure to set the integrated trailer brake controller gain to 0 if you are using an aftermarket trailer brake controller.

## USING THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.

**Note:** An authorized dealer can diagnose the trailer brake controller to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred. Your vehicle warranty does not cover issues with your trailer.

2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** Select default mode if the trailer has surge brakes, or no brakes at all. The system has no effect on the braking performance of the trailer in either of these cases.

**Note:** If a trailer is connected by a four-pin connector, the trailer braking function will not be supported.

## Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

- When you plug in a trailer with electric or electric-over-hydraulic brakes, a message confirming connection appears in the information display.
- Use the gain adjustment to find the desired starting point. A gain setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.

**Note:** Use the following steps to adjust the gain setting whenever road, weather and trailer, or vehicle loading conditions, change from when you initially set the gain.

- In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface and squeeze the manual control lever completely.
- If the trailer wheels lock up, indicated by squealing tires, reduce the gain setting. If the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the gain setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the gain setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lock-up may not be attainable even with the maximum gain setting of 10.

**Note:** Only perform this procedure at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

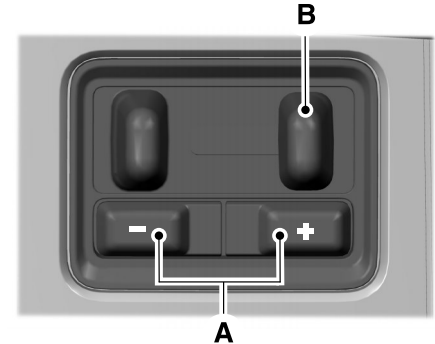
**Note:** The trailer brake controller reduces output at vehicle speeds below 11 mph (18 km/h) so that trailer and vehicle braking is not jerky or harsh. This feature is only available when applying the brakes using your vehicle's brake pedal, not the controller.

**Note:** Your vehicle's brake system and the trailer brake system work independently of each other. Changing the gain setting on the controller does not affect the operation of your vehicle's brakes whether you attach a trailer or not.

**Note:** With the proper electrical connection, pressing your vehicle brake pedal or using the manual control lever illuminates both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

**Note:** When you switch the engine off, the controller output is disabled and the display and module shut down. The controller and display turn on when you switch the ignition on.

### Adjusting the Trailer Brake Gain



- A Increase or decrease the amount of gain in set increments.
- B Slide the control to engage the trailer brakes.

**Note:** Adjust gain setting before using the trailer brake controller for the first time.

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

---

**Note:** The gain should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while making sure the trailer wheels do not lock when using the brakes. Locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

**Note:** Setting adjustments are saved when a trailer profile is selected.

## ADJUSTING THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER MODE

Select the correct integrated trailer brake controller mode option using the touchscreen.

**Note:** Trailer brake gain settings are saved to the active trailer profile.

### Selecting the Trailer Brake Type

1. Press **Default** for trailers with electromagnetic drum brake systems or press **Electric over Hydraulic** for trailers with electrically actuated hydraulic brake systems.
2. Press **Save**.

### Selecting the Trailer Brake Effort

1. Select a setting for your trailer.

**Note:** The default value is **Low** and is the recommended setting for most trailers. Select a different setting if your trailer's brakes require more initial voltage, or you prefer more aggressive trailer braking.

2. Press **Save**.

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

## INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – TROUBLESHOOTING

## INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Trailer Connected	The system detects a correct trailer connection during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Disconnected	The system detects the trailer wiring connection is disconnected, during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Wiring Fault	The system detects an electrical fault in the trailer brake circuit. If this message appears without a trailer attached, see your authorized dealer. If a trailer is attached, inspect and repair the trailer wiring.
Trailer Brake Gain: {trailer gain value:#0.0}	Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake.
Trailer Brake Gain: {trailer gain value:#0.0} No Trailer	Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake when you do not have a trailer connected.

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

---

## **INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **How do I determine if there is an issue with the wiring on my vehicle?**

A message displays accompanied by a single tone, when no trailer is connected. This indicates that the issue is between the trailer brake controller and the 7-pin connector at the bumper.

### **How do I determine if there is an issue with the wiring on my trailer?**

A message only displays with a trailer connected. Consult your trailer dealer for assistance.



# Trailer Sway Control

## HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer Sway Reduce Speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

**Note:** *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

**Note:** *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

**Note:** *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

**Note:** *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

## SWITCHING TRAILER SWAY CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Switch **Trailer Sway Control** on or off.

The system turns on each time you start your vehicle.

# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE

Trailer backup assistance utilizes the control knob on the instrument panel to help you steer a trailer. Turn the control knob in the direction you want the trailer to go and the system steers the vehicle.

## HOW DOES TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE WORK

Trailer backup assistance uses a sticker to detect the trailer angle relative to the towing vehicle and provides instructions, graphics and camera views on the touchscreen.

## TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle.

**Note:** The system is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always be aware of your vehicle and trailer combination, and the surrounding environment.

**Note:** The system does not detect or prevent your vehicle or trailer from making contact with obstacles in the surrounding environment.

**Note:** The front end of your vehicle swings out when changing the direction of the trailer.

**Note:** In certain conditions, the trailer could turn faster or the trailer angle could increase more than anticipated. Always monitor the clearance between the trailer and vehicle and the surroundings.

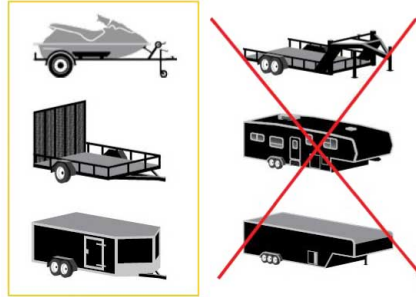
# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

## SETTING UP THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE FOR A CONVENTIONAL TRAILER

### CONFIGURING THE TRAILER

You must configure a trailer in the system to use the trailer reversing aids. This is a one-time setup process per trailer and the trailer information is saved in the system for the next time you use that trailer.

The system only works with conventional trailers. It does not work with other types including gooseneck and fifth-wheel. The following illustration shows examples of conventional trailers on the left-hand side.



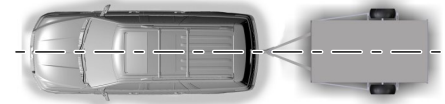
### Positioning the Trailer

Hitch your trailer to the truck and connect the electrical wiring harness. Check to make sure that the wiring is working. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 345).



Park your vehicle and hitched trailer on a level surface.

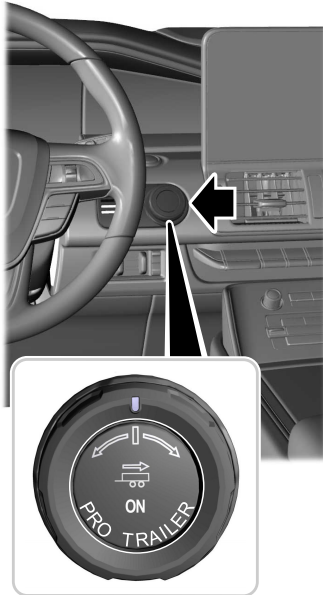
For best results, make sure that your trailer rides level with the ground when you hitch your vehicle. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 345).



Make sure that the trailer and your vehicle are in line with each other. You can do this by putting the transmission in drive (D) and pulling straight forward.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

### Configuring the Trailer in the Touchscreen

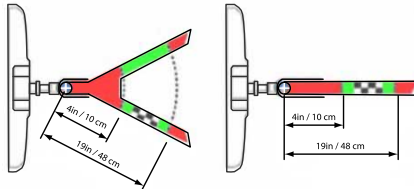


1. Press the button to switch the system on.

2. Press **Add Trailer** on the touchscreen.
3. Follow the directions on the touchscreen to enter the trailer name, then proceed to the sticker setup. See **Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid Sticker** (page 364).

### APPLYING THE TRAILER REVERSING AID STICKER

Place the sticker in an area visible by the rear view camera. The entire sticker must be within 4–19 in (10–48 cm) from the center of the hitch ball, as shown in the following illustration.



Use the sticker placement card and a tape measure to determine the appropriate area to place the sticker. The sticker is in the back cover pocket of your quick start guide. Make sure the entire sticker is within the green zone between the two arcs or distance markers on the diagram, and is also visible in the rear view camera display.

Once you have found the correct location, place the sticker.

**Note:** Make sure nothing can obstruct the rear view camera's view of the sticker such as a jack handle or wiring.

**Note:** Position the sticker on a flat, dry and clean horizontal surface. For best results, apply the sticker when temperatures are above 32°F (0°C).

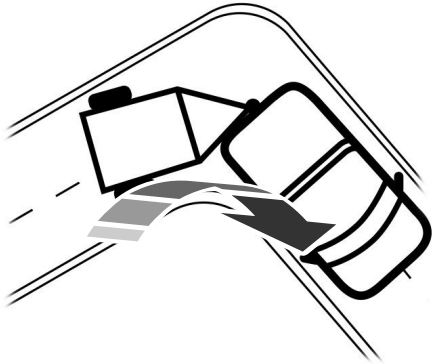
**Note:** Do not move stickers after placing them. Do not re-use any stickers if removed.

**Note:** You can purchase additional stickers through your authorized dealer.

# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

## CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

Calibrating the system requires driving forward and turning left or right. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to complete the calibration process.



**Note:** To calibrate the system, you need an area where you can safely drive forward and turn left or right. An open parking lot is an ideal place to perform the calibration.

**Note:** Keep the steering wheel straight when instructed to by the touchscreen. If the steering wheel is in a turned position during this instruction, the calibration pauses.

**Note:** During calibration, the system determines the trailer length. The system supports trailer lengths of 6–33 ft (1.85–10.05 m) distance from the hitch point to the center of the axle or axles. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 9–18 in (23–46 cm) when installed. Do not attempt to use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.

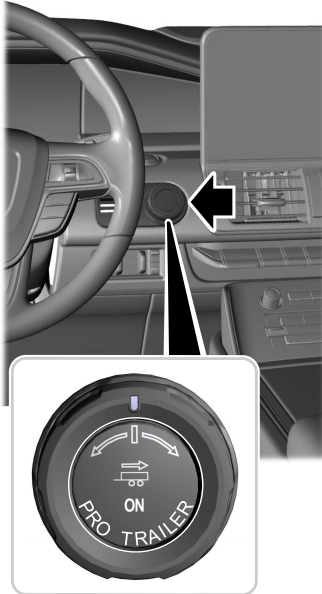
**Note:** The touchscreen shows if you are going too slow or fast. Calibration pauses if the speed is outside the required range of 2–9 mph (4–15 km/h).

**Note:** You need to complete at least a 90° turn, and longer trailers could require a 180° turn. Camera trailer tracking requires the system to locate the hitch ball as well as determine the trailer length. Some trailers could require you to drive straight then turn multiple times before calibration completes. The touchscreen provides instructions and notifies you when calibration completes.

**Note:** For best results, do not calibrate the system at night when calibrating.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

### SWITCHING TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE ON AND OFF



Press the button and use the touchscreen to select the connected trailer.

**Note:** A trailer must be configured to use trailer backup assistance. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 346).

**Note:** If you use the steering wheel when using trailer backup assistance, the system turns off and a message displays in the touchscreen.

**Note:** If the trailer was connected just prior to turning the system on, you may need to drive forward to initialize the system. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to activate the system.

### USING THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE CONTROLLER

Use the control knob to steer the trailer. Take your hands off the steering wheel and turn the control knob instead. The control knob acts as the steering control for the trailer.

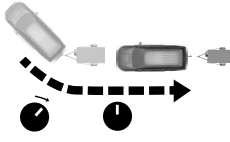


Turn and hold counterclockwise to make the trailer go left.



Turn and hold clockwise to make the trailer go right.

# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)



Release the knob when the trailer is moving in the direction you want.

**Note:** The more you turn the knob, the sharper the trailer turns.

**Note:** Quickly turning and releasing the knob results in a jerky movement of the vehicle.

**Note:** You may have to use the knob to correct the trailer direction when attempting to move the trailer straight back under some conditions.

**Note:** If you want the trailer to turn sharper you can change the trailer angle limit. See **Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Views** (page 367).

## USING THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE VIEWS

Up to three camera views could be available when using trailer backup assistance. Use the view that helps you the most when reversing your vehicle and trailer.



**360° camera view.** Shows a 360° view on the right-hand side of the touchscreen with a rear camera view on the left-hand side of the touchscreen.



**Rear view camera view.** Shows your trailer hitch or what is directly behind your vehicle.



**Trailer reverse guidance view.** Shows you a view of the sides of your vehicle and the trailer. In auto mode, this view moves as the trailer moves so that you do not have to adjust the camera as you turn. Left and right arrows let you see other camera views.

Auto

Auto. Press to return to auto view.

**Note:** Auto mode is the default setting.

## Hitch Angle Graphic

The hitch angle graphic shows a small representation of your vehicle and trailer with visual feedback to help you monitor the trailer. The graphic shows two different colored lines for the trailer hitch angle. A black line shows you where your trailer is in relation to your vehicle. The white line represents the amount the trailer can turn based on knob input.

The graphic shows a yellow and red zone for the hitch angle to warn you of a high angle condition that could require you to pull forward to reduce the hitch angle. The angle limits for each zone vary based on the trailer length.

The yellow zone indicates you are approaching the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. When the trailer enters this zone, it is more difficult to reduce the trailer turn when backing up. It may be necessary to put your vehicle back into drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

---

The red zone indicates you have exceeded the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Immediately stop reversing. Put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward until the trailer is no longer in the red zone.

### Setting the Trailer Angle Limit

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Manage trailers**.

4. Press the saved trailer you want to change.
5. Press **Pro Trailer Backup Assist**.
6. Press **Trailer Angle Limit**.
7. Press a setting.

### Normal Control Angle

Default setting. This provides a balanced limit that returns from a turn to straight backing with minimal change to the trailer direction.

### Max Control Angle

Increases the trailer angle limit close to the maximum controllable angle to allow sharper turns but also causes more change in the trailer direction when straightening out from a turn.



# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

## TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Detecting Trailer Please Wait...	Displays when the system turns on and is initializing.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ System is Not Available	A condition exists that prevents the system from turning on. If the message continues to display, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Driving Required to Initialize Steering Press Knob to Exit	The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully enable the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 25 mph (40 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Stop now Maximum trailer angle Press Knob to Exit	Displays when you reach the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

Message	Description
Stop now. Deactivated by trailer angle.	Displays when you exceed the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position, then activate the system by selecting the connected trailer and following the instructions on the touchscreen. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Stop Now Take Control of Steering Wheel	Displays when the system can no longer steer the vehicle and you must take over steering.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Trailer Not Detected. Shift to Park Press Knob to Exit	These messages display when the system does not detect the trailer. Make sure the rear camera is clean, and the sticker is clearly visible in the camera image. You can also move the trailer forward or backward to change the trailer position and lighting conditions If these messages continue to display, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Trailer Not Detected. Refer to Owner's Manual. Press Knob to Exit	

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

Message	Description
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Trailer Not Detected Pull Forward to Initialize Press Knob to Exit	Display when the camera system cannot detect the trailer and requires trailer movement to enable trailer detection. Drive forward above 2 mph (3 km/h) to initialize the system.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Stop Now System Not Active Press Knob to Exit	Displays when your vehicle is backing up but the system is not activated. Select the connected trailer on the touchscreen and follow the instructions to activate the system. This message also displays when you back up during the calibration process.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Backup Slowly Turn Knob to Steer Press Knob to Exit	Displays when the system turns on and is available to use.

# Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

---

## TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why does the trailer not reverse straight?

Verify the sticker is correctly applied. Other factors such as the hitch connection, road camber, road slope and trailer suspension could influence how straight the system can reverse the trailer when the control knob is not turned. You can compensate for the trailer drifting to the right or left by slowly turning the knob until the trailer is following your desired path and holding the knob in that position. Check that the correct trailer is selected in the touchscreen. Verify the sticker is correctly applied and check that the drawbar and the trailer dimensions are within the allowed range. If the trailer consistently does not reverse straight, delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup process to calibrate the trailer.

### What does it mean if the system remains on one message for an extended time during calibration?

The camera could need to be cleaned, the sticker could be blocked, the drawbar could be outside the allowed range of 9–18 in (23–46 cm) or you could need to move to a different area to change the lighting and background. Verify the sticker is in the proper location. See **Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid Sticker** (page 364). You can move to a different area or change the direction you are driving or set up the system at a different time of day. Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

### What does it mean if the system pauses during calibration?

There could be steering input or trailer movement during the straight drive portion of the calibration process.

### What does it mean if the system displays hold steering steady during turn?

Part of the calibration process for the sticker setup requires a steady turn. If you are continually moving the steering wheel during the turn, this delays the calibration process. To enable the calibration process, hold the steering wheel at the same position when turning.

### What does it mean if the system displays that it is not available?

There could be a sub-system that the system uses that is not correctly operating or there could be a battery voltage issue. If the system continues to display it is not available, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

---

### **What does it mean if the system displays that driving is required to initialize steering?**

The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully turn on the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 25 mph (40 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes. This could also occur when your vehicle is new, there is a battery voltage issue or if the steering system has been serviced.

## Trailer Backup Assistance (If Equipped)

---

### **What does it mean if the trailer is at its maximum angle or the system deactivated by trailer angle?**

You are at the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position. If this message consistently displays, this could indicate the sticker is incorrectly applied, the trailer needs to be recalibrated or the drawbar or the trailer dimensions are outside of the supported range. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 9–18 in (23–46 cm) when installed. The system is designed to work with trailers that have a hitch point to center of the axle or axles measurement of 6–33 ft (1.85–10.05 m). Do not attempt to use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function. Check that the correct trailer is selected on the

touchscreen. Verify the sticker is correctly applied and check that the drawbar and the trailer dimensions are within the allowed range. Then, delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup process to calibrate the trailer.

### **What does it mean when the system tells you to take control of the steering wheel?**

The system is no longer steering the vehicle and you must take over steering. There are four reasons the system could display this message. The first reason the system could display this message is that you have touched the steering wheel when the system is steering. The second reason the system could display this message is that you have exceeded the maximum speed for the feature. The third reason the system could display this message is that the trailer is not detected. The final reason the system could display this message is that an internal condition for system operation is not met that requires your vehicle to return to manual control of the steering.

### **What does it mean if the system does not detect a trailer?**

The system requires a clear view of the sticker placed on the trailer. You must keep the camera lens and sticker clean for the system to correctly operate. If the system cannot initially detect the trailer, it could be necessary for you to change the lighting conditions by moving your vehicle and trailer or waiting until the conditions change. See **Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid Sticker** (page 364). Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

**Note:** *The system is designed to be used with the same trailer connection every time you choose the trailer from the touchscreen. When using a different drawbar or a different pinhole on drawbars with more than one, connecting the drawbar to your vehicle affects the trailer position and you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration process.*

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE

Trailer reverse guidance provides views and graphics on the touchscreen to help you steer your vehicle when you backup a trailer.

## HOW DOES TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE WORK

Trailer reverse guidance uses a sticker to detect the trailer angle relative to the towing vehicle and provides instructions, graphics and camera views on the touchscreen.

## TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe

operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



**WARNING:** This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle.

**Note:** *The system is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always be aware of your vehicle and trailer combination, and the surrounding environment.*

**Note:** *The system does not detect or prevent your vehicle or trailer from making contact with obstacles in the surrounding environment.*

**Note:** *The front end of your vehicle swings out when changing the direction of the trailer.*

**Note:** *In certain conditions, the trailer could turn faster or the trailer angle could increase more than anticipated. Always monitor the clearance between the trailer and vehicle and the surroundings.*

## SETTING UP TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE FOR A CONVENTIONAL TRAILER

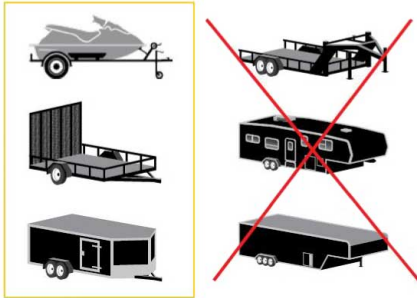
### CONFIGURING THE TRAILER

You must configure a trailer in the system to use trailer reverse guidance. This is a one-time setup process and the trailer information is saved in the system for the next time you use that trailer.

The system only works with conventional trailers. It does not work with other types including fifth-wheel and gooseneck trailers. The following illustration shows examples of conventional trailers on the left-hand side.

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

**Note:** Trailer reverse guidance camera views are available with no trailer setup. However, complete functionality including graphics and automatic view switching is enabled by setup. Setup is required to enable trailer backup assistance.



## Positioning the Trailer

Hitch the trailer to your vehicle and connect the electrical wiring harness. Check to make sure that the wiring is working. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 345).



Park your vehicle and hitched trailer on a level surface.

For best results, make sure that your trailer rides level with the ground when you hitch your vehicle. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 345).



Make sure that the trailer and your vehicle are in line with each other. You can do this by putting the transmission in drive (D) and pulling straight forward.

## Configuring the Trailer in the Touchscreen

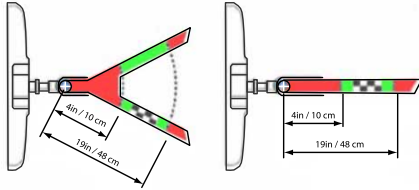
1. Shift to reverse (R).
2. Press the camera view button.
3. Press the trailer view icon.
4. Press **Add Trailer**.
5. Follow the directions on the touchscreen to enter the trailer name, then proceed to the sticker setup. See **Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid Sticker** (page 376).

## APPLYING THE TRAILER REVERSE AID STICKER

Place the sticker in an area visible by the rear view camera. The entire sticker must be within 4–19 in (10–48 cm) from the center of the hitch ball, as shown in the following illustration.



## Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)



Use the sticker placement card and a tape measure to determine the appropriate area to place the sticker. The sticker is in the back cover pocket of your quick start guide. Make sure the entire sticker is within the green zone between the two arcs or distance markers on the diagram, and is also visible in the rear view camera display.

Once you have found the correct location, place the sticker.

**Note:** Make sure nothing can obstruct the rear view camera's view of the sticker such as a jack handle or wiring.

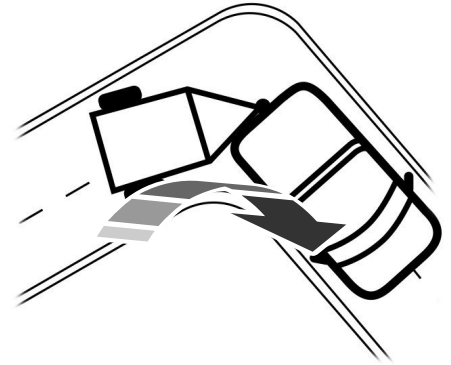
**Note:** Position the sticker on a flat, dry and clean horizontal surface. For best results, apply the sticker when temperatures are above 32°F (0°C).

**Note:** Do not move stickers after placing them. Do not re-use any stickers if removed.

**Note:** You can purchase additional stickers through your authorized dealer.

### CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

Calibrating the system requires driving forward and turning left or right. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to complete the calibration process.



**Note:** To calibrate the system, you need an area where you can safely drive forward and turn left or right. An open parking lot is an ideal place to perform the calibration.

**Note:** Keep the steering wheel straight when instructed to by the touchscreen. If the steering wheel is in a turned position during this instruction, the calibration pauses.

## Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

**Note:** During calibration, the system determines the trailer length. The system supports trailer lengths of 6–33 ft (1.85–10.05 m) distance from the hitch point to the center of the axle or axles. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 9–18 in (23–46 cm) when installed. Do not attempt to use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.

**Note:** The touchscreen shows if you are going too slow or fast. Calibration pauses if the speed is outside the required range of 2–9 mph (4–15 km/h).

**Note:** You need to complete at least a 90° turn, and longer trailers could require a 180° turn. Camera trailer tracking requires the system to locate the hitch ball as well as determine the trailer length. Some trailers could require you to drive straight then turn multiple times before calibration completes. The touchscreen provides instructions and notifies you when calibration completes.

**Note:** For best results, do not calibrate the system at night.

### SWITCHING TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE ON AND OFF

Shift into reverse (R), press the rear camera button to expand the menu, press the trailer icon and use the touchscreen to select the connected trailer.

**Note:** If the trailer was connected just prior to turning the system on, you may need to drive forward to initialize the system. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to activate the system.

### USING TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE VIEWS

Up to three camera views could be available when using trailer reverse guidance. Use the view that helps you the most when reversing your vehicle and trailer.



360° camera view. Shows a 360° view on the right-hand side of the touchscreen with a rear camera view on the left-hand side of the touchscreen.



Rear view camera view. Shows your trailer hitch or what is directly behind your vehicle.



Trailer reverse guidance view. Shows you a view of the sides of your vehicle and the trailer. In auto mode, this view moves as the trailer moves so that you do not have to adjust the camera as you turn. Left and right arrows let you see other camera views.



Straight backup mode. Shows which way to turn your steering wheel to keep the trailer straight. Use this view when you want to keep your trailer completely in line with your vehicle.

**Note:** It may be helpful to shift your vehicle into drive (D), pull forward and straighten out the vehicle and trailer before engaging straight backup mode.

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)



This takes you back to the 360° camera system and out of the trailer reverse guidance feature.



Auto. Press to return to auto view.

**Note:** *Auto mode is the default setting.*

## Hitch Angle Graphic

The hitch angle graphic shows a small representation of your vehicle and trailer with visual feedback to help you monitor the trailer. The graphic shows two different colored lines for the trailer hitch angle. A black line shows you where your trailer is in relation to your vehicle. The white line represents the amount the trailer can turn based on steering wheel position.

The graphic shows a yellow and red zone for the hitch angle to warn you of a high angle condition that could require you to pull forward to reduce the hitch angle. The angle limits for each zone vary based on the trailer length.

The yellow zone indicates you are approaching the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. When the trailer enters this zone, it is more difficult to reduce the trailer turn when backing up. It may be necessary to put your vehicle back into drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position.

The red zone indicates you have exceeded the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Immediately stop reversing. Put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward until the trailer is no longer in the red zone.

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

## TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – TROUBLESHOOTING

## TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Detecting Trailer Please Wait...	Displays when the system turns on and is initializing.
Trailer Reverse Guidance System is Not Available	A condition exists that prevents the system from turning on. If the message continues to display, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Driving Required to Initialize Steering Press OK to Exit	The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully enable the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 25 mph (40 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes.
Stop now. Deactivated by trailer angle.	Displays when you exceed the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position, then activate the system by selecting the connected trailer and following the instructions on the touchscreen. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.

## Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

Message	Description
Trailer Reverse Guidance Trailer Not Detected. Refer to Owner's Manual. Press OK to Exit	Displays when the system does not detect the trailer. Check that the sticker is correctly applied and the trailer length is within the allowed range. You can also move the trailer forward or backward to change the trailer position and lighting conditions. If these messages continue to display, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Trailer Not Detected Pull Forward to Initialize Press OK to Exit	Displays when your vehicle has not moved after switching on the system or extended operation below 1 mph (1 km/h). Drive forward above 2 mph (3 km/h) to initialize the system.

# Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

---

## TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### What does it mean if the system remains on one message for an extended time during calibration?

The camera could need to be cleaned, the sticker could be blocked, the drawbar could be outside the allowed range of 9–18 in (23–46 cm) or you could need to move to a different area to change the lighting and background. Verify the sticker is in the proper location. See **Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid Sticker** (page 376). You can move to a different area or change the direction you are driving or setup the system at a different time of day. Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

### What does it mean if the system pauses during calibration?

There could be steering input or trailer movement during the straight drive portion of the calibration process.

### What does it mean if the system displays hold steering steady during turn?

Part of the calibration process for the sticker setup requires a steady turn. If you are continually moving the steering wheel during the turn, this delays the calibration process. To enable the calibration process, hold the steering wheel at the same position when turning.

### What does it mean if the system displays that it is not available?

There could be a sub-system that the system uses that is not correctly operating or there could be a battery voltage issue. If the system continues to display it is not available, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.

### What does it mean if the system displays that driving is required to initialize steering?

The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully turn on the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 25 mph (40 km/h) for approximately 5 minutes. This could also occur when your vehicle is new, there is a battery voltage issue or if the steering system has been serviced.

### What does it mean if the system does not detect a trailer?

The system requires a clear view of the sticker placed on the trailer. You must keep the camera lens and sticker clean for the system to correctly operate. If the system cannot initially detect the trailer, it could be necessary for you to change the lighting conditions by moving your vehicle and trailer or waiting until the conditions change. See **Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid Sticker** (page 376). Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

## Trailer Reverse Guidance (If Equipped)

---

**Note:** *The system is designed to be used with the same trailer connection every time you choose the trailer from the touchscreen. When using a different drawbar or a different pin hole on drawbars with more than one, connecting the drawbar to your vehicle affects the trailer position and you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration process.*

# Driving Hints

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -13°F (-25°C).

## DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 232).

## BREAKING-IN

Your vehicle requires a break-in period. For the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km), avoid driving at high speeds, heavy braking, aggressive shifting or using your vehicle to tow. During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

## DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.

- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.



# Driving Hints

## DRIVING IN SPECIAL CONDITIONS

### DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

#### Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, as damage to the transmission could occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, as damage to the transmission and tires could occur or the engine could overheat.*

#### Water

If you must drive through deep water, drive slowly. The water could limit traction or brake capability. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 386).

When driving through water, determine the depth and avoid water higher than the center of the wheel.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop your vehicle as quickly as dry brakes. Apply light pressure to the brake pedal while slowly moving the vehicle to dry the brakes.

**Note:** *Driving through deep water could cause damage to the transmission. If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, have the axle lubricant and power transfer unit lubricant checked and changed if necessary.*

## DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN



**WARNING:** Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

**Note:** *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

# Driving Hints

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

**Note:** *Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brakes.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck driving on hilly or sloping terrain, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, as damage to the transmission could occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, as damage to the transmission and tires could occur or the engine could overheat.*

## DRIVING IN SAND

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Steadily drive through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck driving on hilly or sloping terrain, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, as damage to the transmission could occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, as damage to the transmission and tires could occur or the engine could overheat.*

## DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.

## Driving Hints



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

### FLOOR MATS

**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



# Driving Hints

---

To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

**Note:** *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

If you have a vehicle concern, Lincoln offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available:

- Throughout the life of the vehicle for original owners.
- For six years or 70,000 mi (110,000 km), whichever comes first, for subsequent owners.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare. For vehicles with an unusable tire inflation kit, we provide towing service.
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance - key replacement cost is the client's responsibility.

- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2 gal (8 L) of gasoline fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.

- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall tow Lincoln eligible vehicles to the client's selling or preferred dealer within 100 mi (160 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest Lincoln dealer. If a client requests a tow to a selling or preferred dealer that is more than 100 mi (160 km) from the disablement location, the client is responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 100 mi (160 km).
- Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

United States clients who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-521-4140 or contact Roadside Assistance using the Lincoln Way mobile app.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

If you need to arrange roadside assistance on your own, Lincoln reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest Lincoln dealership within 100 mi (160 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States clients, call 1-800-521-4140. Clients need to submit their original receipts.

## Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

If you have a vehicle concern, Lincoln offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, beginning from the original warranty start date and lasts the life of the vehicle for the original owner. Subsequent owners receive coverage that is concurrent with the 6 years or 70,000 mi (110,000 km), whichever occurs first, powertrain warranty coverage period.

**Note:** *Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.*

For complete program coverage details, review your warranty guide, contact your dealer, call us in Canada at 1-844-665-2007, or visit our website at [www.lincolncanada.com](http://www.lincolncanada.com).

If you purchased your vehicle in Canada and require roadside assistance, please call 1-844-665-2007 or contact Roadside Assistance using the Lincoln Way mobile app.

**Note:** *For quick reference, complete the roadside assistance identification card found in the glove compartment of your vehicle and place it in your wallet.*

## SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

**Note:** *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

**⚠ WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**⚠ WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

**⚠ WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

**⚠ WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

**⚠ WARNING:** If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

## PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

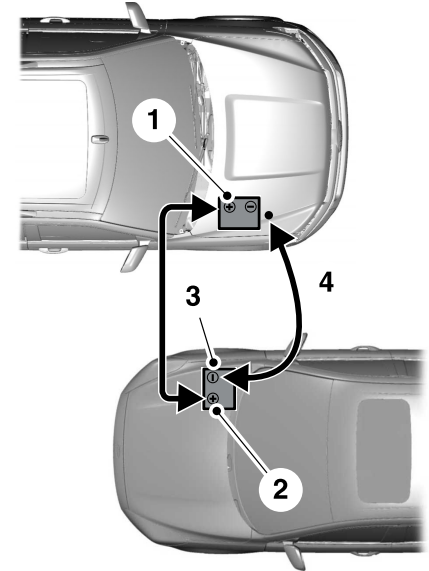
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### Connecting the Jumper Cables

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

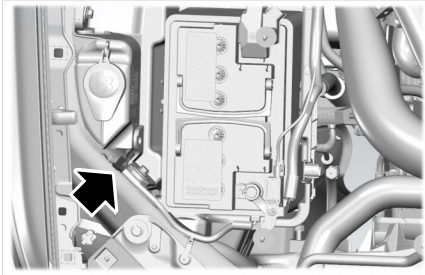
**Note:** If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



## Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

### HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

### POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.



# Crash and Breakdown Information

## SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

**Note:** *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

## POST IMPACT BRAKING

### HOW DOES POST IMPACT BRAKING WORK

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

### POST IMPACT BRAKING LIMITATIONS

Post impact braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.
- Vehicle speed is below 5 mph (10 km/h).

## OVERRIDING POST IMPACT BRAKING

You can override post impact braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

## POST IMPACT BRAKING INDICATORS



It flashes when a post impact braking event is occurring.

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

**Note:** *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

## RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE


1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.


**Note:** *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## RECOVERY TOWING (IF EQUIPPED)

### ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT

 **WARNING:** Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Switch the ignition off before removing the recovery hook. Failure to do so could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** The recovery hook can become hot. Let the recovery hook cool down before removing it. Failure to do so could result in personal injury.

Your vehicle has frame-mounted front recovery hooks.

**Note:** *Do not apply a load to the recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.*

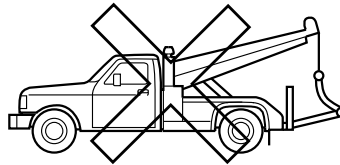
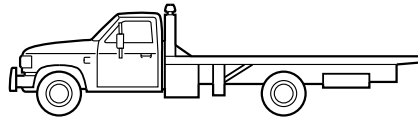
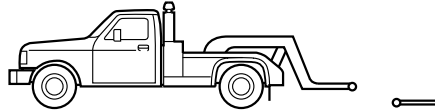
Before using recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.

## Crash and Breakdown Information

- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

### TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Vehicle damage could occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Front-wheel and rear-wheel drive vehicles must have their designated drive wheels off the ground regardless of towing direction. Use tow dollies to prevent damage to the transmission.

All-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicles require that all wheels be off the ground using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission and drive system.

**Note:** You need to switch on the ignition to unlock the steering.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

**Note:** *Make sure you check the steering column before towing. It could lock if the battery is dead.*

# Towing Your Vehicle

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.

**Note:** If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - 4X4



**WARNING:** Do not disconnect the battery when recreationally towing your vehicle. This prevents the transfer case from shifting properly and could cause the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in park (P).



**WARNING:** Placing the transfer case in its neutral position could cause your vehicle to freely roll. Make sure you press and hold the brake pedal and the vehicle is in a secure, safe position when you place the transfer case in its neutral position.

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are to make sure that you do not damage the transmission.

You can only tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground by placing the transfer case in its neutral position and engaging the recreational tow feature. Perform the following steps after positioning your vehicle behind the tow vehicle and properly securing them together.

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle.

**Note:** Failure to put the transfer case in its neutral position can damage vehicle components.

**Note:** You can check the towing status at any time by opening the driver door or turning the ignition to the accessory or on position. **Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral** appears in the instrument cluster display to confirm you can recreationally tow your vehicle.

**Note:** If your vehicle has an anti-theft alarm, make sure you switch perimeter sensing on when towing. See **Setting the Alarm Security Level** (page 107).

### Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Start your vehicle.
2. Make sure your vehicle is in **NORMAL** mode. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 295).
3. Place your vehicle in temporary neutral mode. See **Entering Temporary Neutral Mode** (page 222).

# Towing Your Vehicle

4. Switch your vehicle off by pressing the push button ignition switch once. A message appears in the instrument cluster display.
5. Switch your vehicle to accessory mode by pressing the push button ignition switch once without pressing the brake pedal.
6. Press and hold the brake pedal.
7. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
8. Select **Neutral Tow**.
9. Press and hold the **OK** button until a confirmation message appears in the information display.

**Note:** If completed successfully, the information display shows **Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral**. This indicates that your vehicle is safe to tow with all wheels on the ground.

**Note:** If you do not see a confirmation message in the instrument cluster display, you must perform the procedure again from the beginning.

**Note:** You may hear noise as the transfer case shifts into its neutral position. This is normal.

10. Release the brake pedal.
11. Leave the transmission in neutral (N) and switch your vehicle off by pressing the push button ignition switch once without pressing the brake pedal.

## Switching Neutral Tow Off

1. With your vehicle properly secured to the tow vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal and start the engine.
2. Switch your vehicle off by pressing the push button ignition switch once and release the brake pedal.
3. Place your vehicle in accessory mode by pressing the push button ignition switch once without pressing the brake pedal.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Shift into park (P).
6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** If completed successfully, the instrument cluster displays **2H** and **Neutral Tow Disabled**.

**Note:** You must perform the switching neutral tow on and switching neutral tow off procedures again from the beginning if the indicator light and message do not display.

**Note:** You may hear a noise as the transfer case shifts out of its neutral position. This is normal.

7. Apply the parking brake, then disconnect your vehicle from the tow vehicle.
8. Release the parking brake, start the engine, and shift into drive (D) to make sure the transfer case is out of the neutral tow position.
9. If the transfer case does not successfully shift out of its neutral position, set the parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Resolving the Shift Delayed Drive Forward Message

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start your vehicle.

# Towing Your Vehicle

---

3. Shift into neutral (N).
4. With the vehicle running, shift into drive (D) and let the vehicle roll forward up to 3 ft (1 m).

**Note:** *You may hear a noise as the transfer case shifts out of its neutral position. This is normal.*

5. Make sure the instrument cluster displays **Neutral Tow Disabled**.

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - 4X2

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. You must recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

## EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Use the manual park release procedure. See **Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 235). Failure to do so may result in damage to the transmission.
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

# Towing Your Vehicle

---

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral	The transfer case is in the neutral position and your vehicle is safe to tow with all four wheels on the ground.
Shift Delayed Drive Forward	There is a transfer case gear tooth blockage present. With your vehicle on, shift the transmission into drive (D) and let the vehicle roll forward, up to 3 ft (1 m).
Neutral Tow Disabled	The transfer case is not in the neutral position and your vehicle is not safe to tow with all four wheels on the ground.



# Fuses

## FUSE PRECAUTIONS

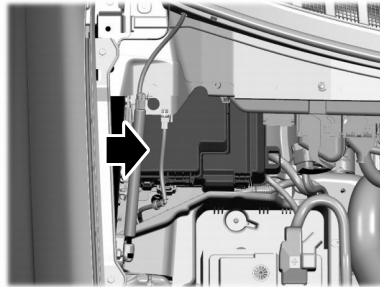
**⚠ WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

**⚠ WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

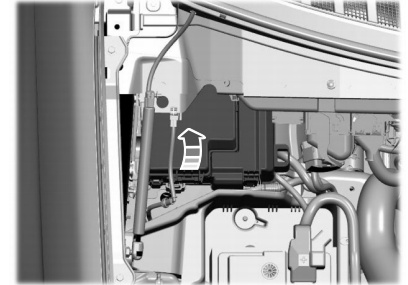
**⚠ WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

## UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

### LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

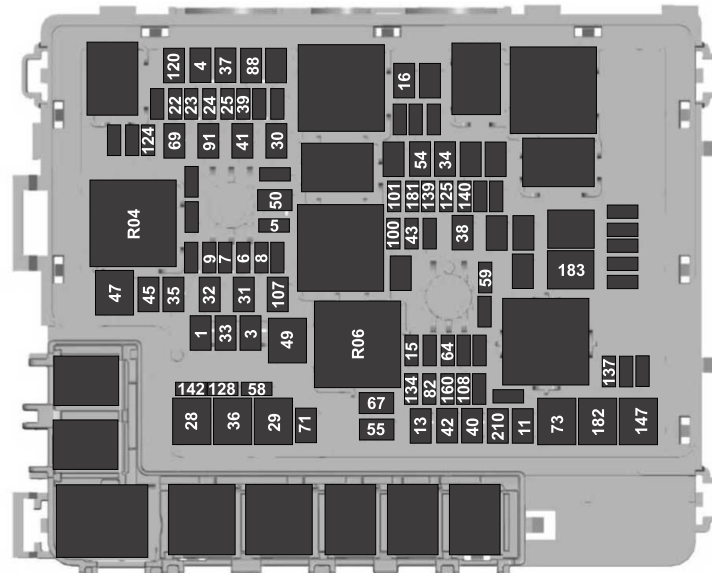


## ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



# Fuses

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	30 A	Body control module 1.
3	30 A	Body control module 2.
4	30 A	Fuel pump.
5	5 A	Powertrain control module relay.
6	20 A	Vehicle power 1.
7	25 A	Vehicle power 2.
8	20 A	Vehicle power 3.
9	20 A	Vehicle power 4.
11	30 A	Starter relay.
13	40 A	Front blower motor.
15	20 A	Horn.
16	20 A	Windshield washer pump.
22	10 A	Electronic power assist steering run/start feed.
23	10 A	Anti-lock brake system run/start feed.
24	10 A	Powertrain control module. Transmission control module.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
25	10 A	Rear view camera. Air quality sensor run/start feed.
28	50 A	Anti-lock brake system pump.
29	50 A	Anti-lock brake system valves.
30	30 A	Driver seat motors.
31	30 A	Passenger seat motors.
32	20 A	Power point 1.
33	—	Not used.
34	20 A	Power point 3.
35	20 A	Power point 4.
36	40 A	Inverter.
37	30 A	Climate controlled seats - passenger side.
38	30 A	Climate controlled seats - driver side.
39	20 A	Second row seat module.
40	40 A	Power running boards.
41	30 A	Powered liftgate module.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
42	30 A	Trailer brake control module.
43	5 A	Lincoln star lamp.
45	20 A	Power point 5.
47	50 A	Electric fan 1.
49	50 A	Electric fan 2.
50	40 A	Heated rear window.
54	40 A	Electronic limited slip differential.
55	30 A	Trailer tow parking lamps relay.
58	10 A	Trailer tow backup lamps.
59	20 A	Rear multi-contour seats.
64	25 A	Four-wheel drive module 1.
67	15 A	Transmission run/start.
69	30 A	Left-hand side wiper motor.
71	20 A	Rear window wiper relay.
73	50 A	Power folding seat module - third row.
82	25 A	Four-wheel drive module 2.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
88	40 A	Auxiliary blower.
91	20 A	Trailer tow lighting module power.
100	30 A	Left-hand headlamp.
101	30 A	Right-hand headlamp.
107	30 A	Trailer battery charge.
108	20 A	Not used (spare).
120	15 A	Fuel injectors.
124	5 A	Rain sensor module.
125	5 A	USB smart charger 1.
128	7.5 A	Family entertainment system.
134	20 A	Multi-contour seats relay.
137	20 A	Advanced driver-assistance systems module. Connected camera.
139	5 A	USB smart charger 2.
140	5 A	USB smart charger 3.
142	5 A	USB smart charger 5.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
147	40 A	Not used (spare).
160	10 A	Smart data link connector.
181	5 A	Headlamp control module.
182	60 A	Driver door control module.
183	60 A	Passenger door control module.
210	30 A	Body control module start stop.

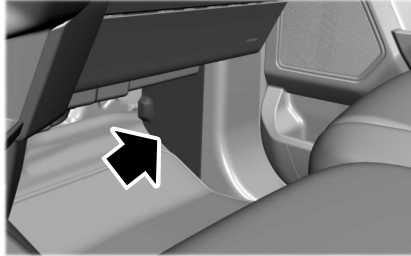
Relay Number	Protected Component
R04	Electric fan 1 relay.
R06	Electric fan 3 relay.

# Fuses

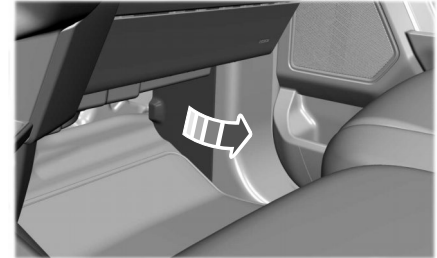
---

## BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

### LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



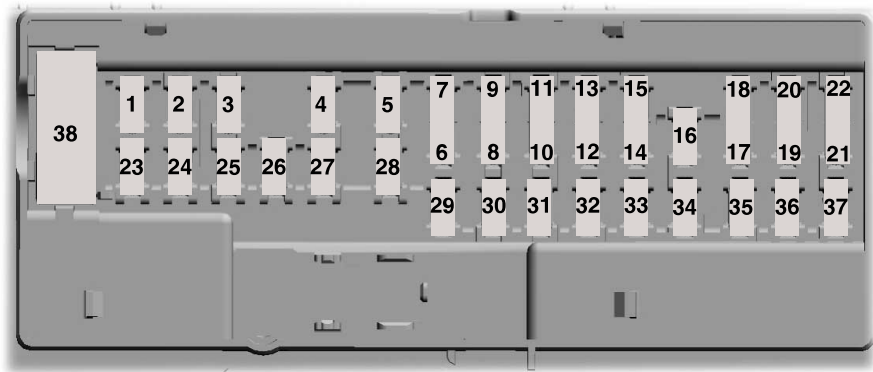
### ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX





# Fuses

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	10 A	Driver seat switch.
3	7.5 A	Driver door unlock.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
4	20 A	Speaker amplifier.
5	—	Not used.
6	10 A	Smart datalink connector logic.
7	10 A	Rear audio control module. Head up display.
8	5 A	Wireless accessory charger. Hands-free liftgate module.
9	5 A	Keypad. Combined sensor module.
10	—	Not used.
11	—	Not used.
12	7.5 A	Instrument cluster.
13	7.5 A	Steering column control module. Smart datalink connector logic. Climate control module. Gear shift module.
14	15 A	Brake switch.
15	15 A	SYNC.

# Fuses

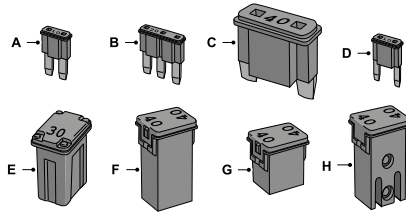
Item	Rating	Protected Component
16	—	Not used.
17	7.5 A	Headlamp control module.
18	7.5 A	Not used (spare).
19	5 A	Telematics control unit module. Bluetooth low energy module.
20	5 A	Not used (spare).
21	5 A	In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.
22	5 A	Electrochromic mirror. Second row heated seat module.
23	30 A	Left-hand front door zone module. Power window switch. Power mirror switch. DVD player.
24	30 A	Moonroof logic.
25	20 A	Speaker amplifier 2.
26	30 A	Right-hand front door zone module.
27	30 A	Left-hand rear door zone module.
28	30 A	Right-hand rear door zone module.

## Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
29	15 A	Adjustable column and pedal memory module.
30	5 A	Trailer tow control module.
31	10 A	Rear climate control module. Drive mode switch module. Terrain management system switch. Radio frequency transceiver module.
32	20 A	Audio control module. Rear seat entertainment module. Rear audio control module.
33	—	Not used.
34	30 A	Run/start relay.
35	5 A	Not used (spare).
36	15 A	Image processing module A. Automated park assist module. Continuous control damping module. Air particulate matter sensor.
37	20 A	Heated steering wheel.
38	30A Circuit Breaker	Left-hand rear power window. Right-hand rear power window.

# Fuses

## IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

## FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

#### When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

#### How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

# Maintenance

## MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Service your vehicle regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 467).

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.

- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material, such as cigarettes, away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Set the parking brake, shift the transmission to park (P) and block the wheels.

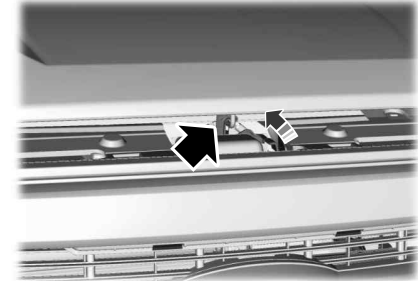
## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully latch the hood before driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



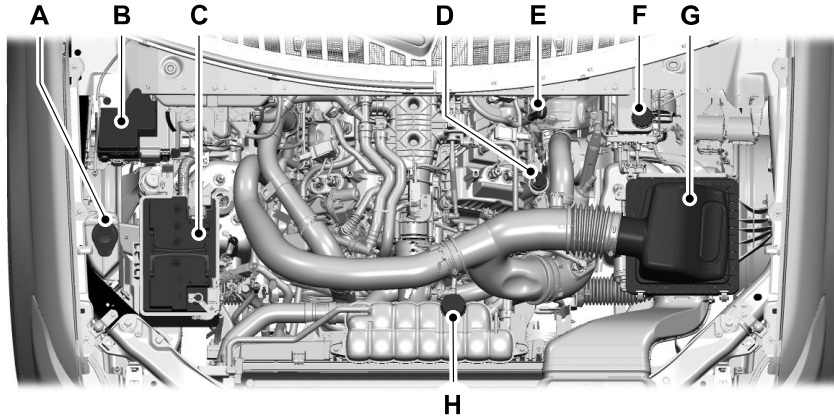
1. Pull the hood release handle under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



# Maintenance

2. Pull the secondary release lever under the front of the hood near the center of your vehicle.
3. Raise the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.
4. To close, lower the hood and make sure that it fully latches.

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW



- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 118).
- B Engine compartment fuse box. See **Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 401).

# Maintenance

---

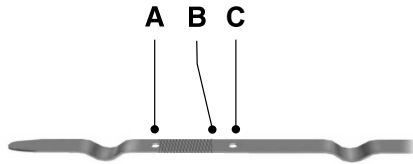
- C Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 424).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 417).
- E Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 417).
- F Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 232).
- G Air filter. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 423).
- H Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant** (page 418).



# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL

### ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW



- A Minimum.
- B Nominal.
- C Maximum.

### CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

**Note:** Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

**Note:** If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

**Note:** Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.

**Note:** If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, schedule a visit to your authorized dealer.

### ADDING ENGINE OIL



**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



**WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.

# Maintenance

2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 467).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

**Note:** Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

## RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Depending on your cluster, there are two paths to reset the engine oil change reminder.

### Path 1

1. Press the Menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.

3. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
4. Select **Oil Life**.
5. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

### Path 2

1. Press the Menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
2. Select **Truck Info**.
3. Select **Engine Information**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

For filling information, please refer to the Capacities and Specifications section of your owner's manual. See **Engine Oil Capacity and Specification** (page 469).

## CHECKING THE COOLANT

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 529).

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the minimum and maximum marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29°F (-34°C) and -35°F (-37°C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

# Maintenance

## Adding Coolant



**WARNING:** Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 467). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and could void the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionized or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 467). Using water that has not been deionized may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant.

# Maintenance

3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
4. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, repeat step 2.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. Service your vehicle as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute, as they can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.

- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates, you may need to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.

**Note:** *A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and could cause engine damage.*

If you drive in extremely hot climates, you may need to decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.

**Note:** *A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection. Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the overheat and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and could cause engine damage.*

## Coolant Change



**WARNING:** Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Change the coolant at specific mileage intervals. Refer to the scheduled maintenance information. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 533).

**Note:** *Dispose of used coolant in the appropriate manner.*

Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

# Maintenance

## Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

### How Fail-Safe Cooling Works



**WARNING:** If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated



**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

# Maintenance

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine could operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

**Note:** *If you continue to drive your vehicle in fail-safe mode without repairing it, you will damage your engine.*

## Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

# Maintenance

2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

## ENGINE AIR FILTER

### CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER



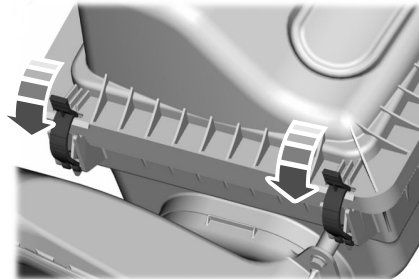
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Change the engine air filter element at the proper intervals. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 533).

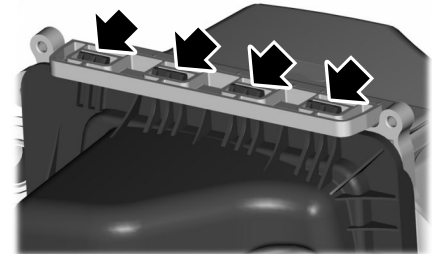
When changing the engine air filter, use only the air filter element listed. See **Motorcraft Parts** (page 468).

**Note:** *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

**Note:** *When servicing the air cleaner, do not allow foreign material to enter the air induction system.*



1. Release the two clamps that secure the cover to the air filter housing. Push the air filter cover toward the front of the vehicle and up slightly to release it.
2. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
3. Install the new air filter element.



4. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure all the clamps. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover, and make sure that you properly align the tabs on the edge into the slots.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle has a lifetime fuel filter that integrates with the fuel tank. It does not need regular maintenance or replacement.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



**WARNING:** This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 415).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover and vent hose, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.



# Maintenance

---

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Battery Sensor Reset

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

**Note:** *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

## Battery Management System (If Equipped)

The system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life. If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message may appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

# Maintenance

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

**Note:** *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system may temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

## Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it may adversely affect battery performance and durability. This may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

## Remove and Reinstall the Battery

Install a battery approved for use by our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 467).

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow the system to store diagnostic and adaptive tables. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.

6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

**Note:** *Make sure to fully tighten the battery cables.*

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 134).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

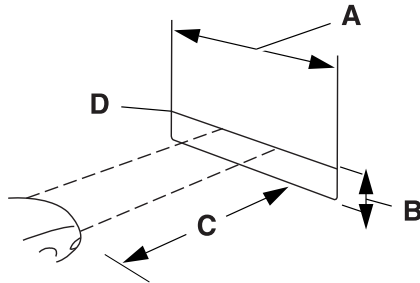
# Maintenance

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, contact an authorized dealer to check and realign your headlamps.

### Headlamp Aiming Target



A 8 feet (2.4 m).

B Center height of lamp to ground.

C 25 feet (7.6 m).

D Horizontal reference line.

1. Park your vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) away.
2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp, indicated by a 3 millimeter circle on the lens, to the ground and mark an 8 ft (2.4 m) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height, a piece of masking tape works well.
3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light hits the wall.



4. On the wall or screen, observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge toward the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, adjust the beam so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.

# Maintenance



## EXTERIOR BULBS

### EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

## INTERIOR BULBS

### INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

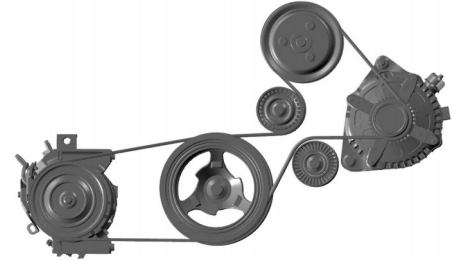
Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a #2 Phillips screwdriver to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise or clockwise in order to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp.
6. Repeat Steps 3 through 7 to adjust the other headlamp.
7. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

### Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is not adjustable.

## DRIVE BELT ROUTING



**Note:** The long drive belt is on the inner groove closest to the engine. The short drive belt is on the outer groove farthest from the engine.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover, ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner, ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash, ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser, ZC-20 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P3-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo, CXC-66-A (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner, ZC-56 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner, CXC-101 (Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant, ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid, CXC-37-F/M (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner, ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner, CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A

# Vehicle Care

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover, ZC-14 (U.S.)	
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner, ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

### CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

### CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

### CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

[Lincoln Chrome Care](#)

# Vehicle Care

---

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

**Note:** *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

**Note:** *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

## CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

**Note:** *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

## CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

**Note:** *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

**Note:** *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

## CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

# Vehicle Care

- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179°F (82°C).

**Note:** Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

## CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

## CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

## CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

**Note:** Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.



# Vehicle Care

**Note:** Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

## CLEANING LEATHER AND VINYL

We recommend that you only clean the leather and vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## CLEANING FABRIC SEATS AND HEADLINERS



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the fabric seats and headliners in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING MOONROOF TRACKS

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

**Note:** *The moonroof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.*

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

# Storing Your Vehicle

---

## PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensures your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

### General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.

- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

### Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

### Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Rewax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

# Storing Your Vehicle

## 12 Volt Battery

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend disconnecting the 12v battery which will reduce system loads on the battery.
- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

**Note:** *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

## Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

**Note:** *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

## Tires

Maintain recommended air pressure.

**Note:** *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

## REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.

- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See **Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels** (page 337).

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES



Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires us to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

## Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## Traction AA A B C



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

# Wheel and Tire Information

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## Temperature A B C



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

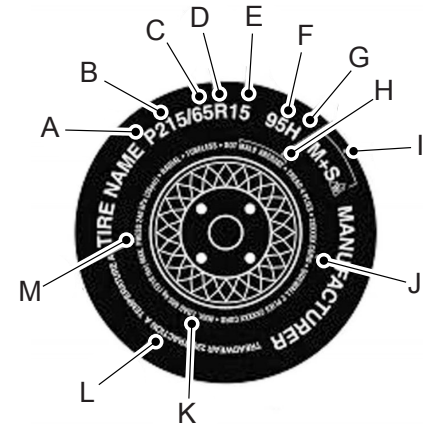
The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause

the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

## Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

# Wheel and Tire Information

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)

# Wheel and Tire Information

Letter rating	Speed rating
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers

go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

**J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

**L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

**\*Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.



## Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

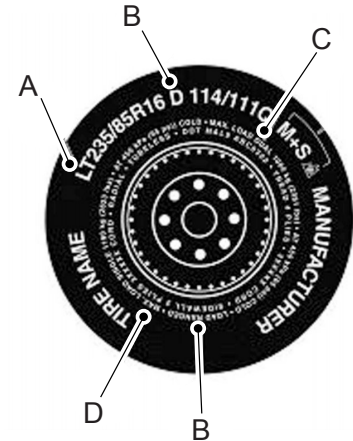
**M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to

the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

### Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

**A. LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## B. Load Range and Load Inflation

**Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

## C. Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi

**(kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

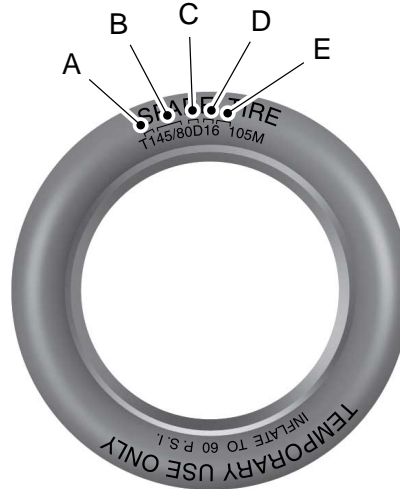
## D. Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi

**(kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

## Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

**R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

# Wheel and Tire Information

---

## GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

**\*Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

**\*Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

**\*Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

**\*Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

**\*Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

**\*kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

**\*PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

**\*Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

**\*Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

**\*B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

**\*Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

**\*Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

**\*Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

**\*Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

### AGE



**WARNING:** Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

## Wheel and Tire Information



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



**WARNING:** For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



**WARNING:** Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.



**WARNING:** When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential Four-Wheel Drive (4WD) malfunction or (4WD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.



**WARNING:** If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be the same size, construction, and load range as the original tires listed on the tire placard, and they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.



**WARNING:** Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures

found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

Only use snow chains on rear wheels. Install snow chains in pairs. Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes. Only install chains that are 15mm or less (SAE Class S chains).

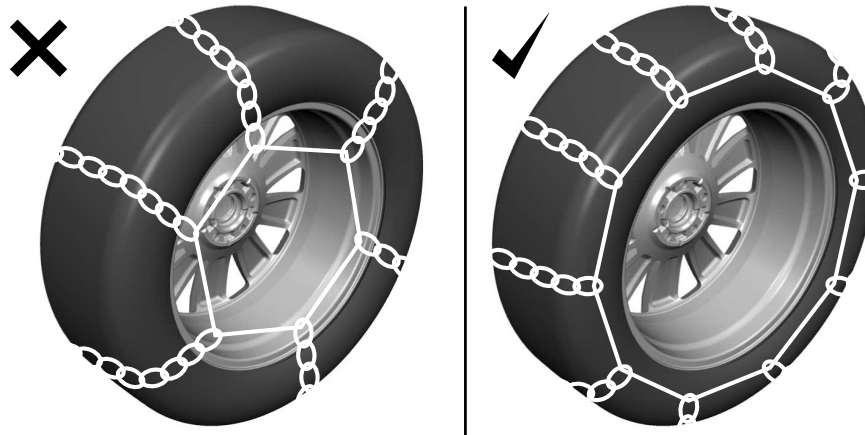
- 265/70R17
- 275/65R18

We recommend you use steel wheels of the same size and specification if snow chains are required because chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices:

## Wheel and Tire Information

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Purchase snow chains from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- When driving with snow chains do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the snow chains rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and tighten them. If this does not work, remove the snow chains to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the snow chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use snow chains on dry roads.
- If a temporary spare wheel is mounted on your vehicle, do not use snow chains on the axle with the temporary spare wheel.



## Wheel and Tire Information

---

Use snow chains that fit against the sidewall of the tire to prevent the chains from touching the wheel rims or suspension. Refer to the previous illustration.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains, please contact your authorized dealer.



# Tire Care

## CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 449).

## INFLATING THE TIRES



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup

and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

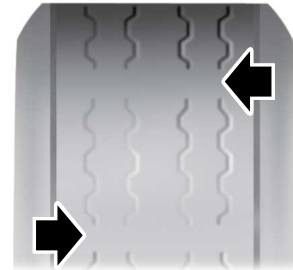
Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR WEAR



# Tire Care

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves.

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire dismantled and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

## Safety Practices



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you could eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This could further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

# Tire Care

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer.

## INSPECTING THE WHEEL VALVE STEMS

Check the valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that could permit air leakage.

## TIRE ROTATION



**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

**Note:** If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.

**Note:** If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

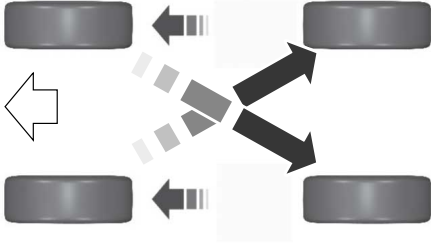
**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

## Tire Rotation Diagram

Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.

## Tire Care

---



# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in

heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, see the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seat) or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

**Note:** *If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.*

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

**Note:** Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

**Note:** After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the warning indicator to turn off.

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



Using the instrument cluster display arrow keys navigate to the truck info section where you can view the tire pressures.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-Pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Trailer Tire Low Specified:	One or more tires on your trailer is below the specified tire pressure.
Trailer Tire Over Temperature	Displays when one or more tires on your trailer is above the recommended temperature.
Trailer Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	A trailer tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

---

Message	Action
Trailer Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The trailer tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.
Trailer Tire Pressure Monitor Capability Not Detected	The system cannot detect the trailer tire pressure monitoring system.
Trailer Tire Pressure Indication Not Setup See Manual	The trailer tire pressure monitoring system is not setup. See <b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b> (page 453).

# Changing a Road Wheel

## CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have the flat serviced by an authorized dealer to prevent damage to the system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 453). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the system sensor for damage.

**Note:** Only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.

## Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information



**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the other road tires and wheels on your vehicle.

### Full-size dissimilar spare

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is recommended that you do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) in four-wheel drive.
- Engage four-wheel drive unless the vehicle is stationary.
- Use four-wheel drive on dry pavement.

Using a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can compromise the effectiveness of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.

# Changing a Road Wheel

- Wet weather driving capability.
- Four-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

## Location of the Spare Tire and Tools

The spare tire is located under the vehicle, just forward of the rear bumper. The jack, swivel wrench and lug wrench are in the following locations:

Item	Location
Spare tire	Under the vehicle, just forward of the rear bumper
Jack and tool kit bag	Under the access panel located in the floor compartment behind the rear seat

## Tire Change Procedure



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side

door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

# Changing a Road Wheel

**⚠ WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

**⚠ WARNING:** Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING:** Switch off the running boards before jacking or placing any object under your vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and your vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.

**⚠ WARNING:** Only use the spare wheel carrier to stow wheels provided with your vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING:** Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.

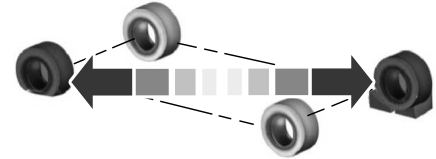
**⚠ WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).

**⚠ WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level ground and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Apply the parking brake, place the transmission in park (P) and switch the ignition off.

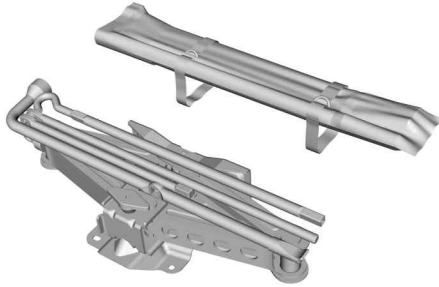
3. Block the wheels diagonally opposite the flat tire, for example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.



## Removing the Jack and Tools

1. Open the liftgate and lift the load floor behind the third row seat. If your vehicle has an access panel, unlatch and remove this panel.
2. Remove the wing nut by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Remove the jack and tool kit bag from the bracket, loosen the straps and remove the tool bag from the jack.

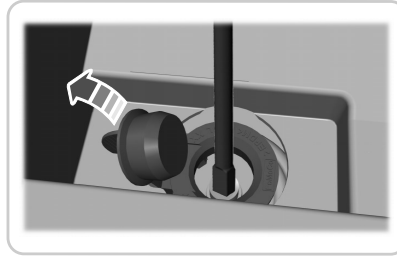
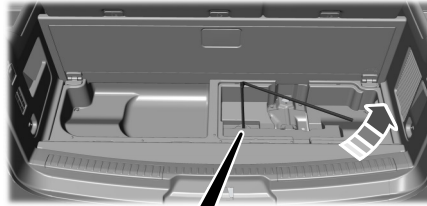
# Changing a Road Wheel



**Note:** Pay close attention to the orientation of the jack and tool kit bag, because it needs to be reinstalled after changing the tire.

## Removing the Spare Tire

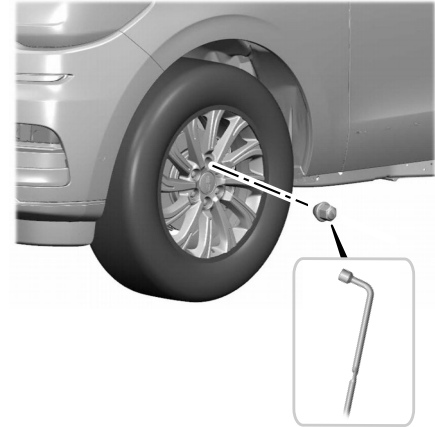
1. Remove the swivel wrench from the tool kit bag, open the spare tire winch access plug at the bottom of the compartment for the jack and tools tray.
2. Insert the swivel wrench through the access hole in the floor to engage the winch. Turn the handle counterclockwise until the tire lowers to the ground and the cable is slightly slack.



3. Slide the retainer through the center of the spare tire wheel and remove the spare tire.

**Note:** If your wheel nuts are hidden, use the tool provided in the jack kit to remove the wheel trim to access the wheel nuts.

4. Loosen each wheel lug one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is off the ground.



## Jacking the Vehicle

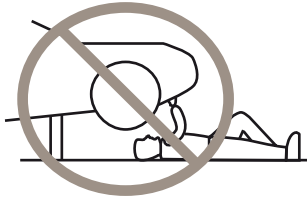


**WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

## Changing a Road Wheel



**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



**WARNING:** It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.



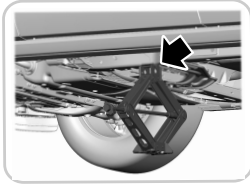
**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

**Note:** The jack does not require maintenance or additional lubrication over the service life of your vehicle.

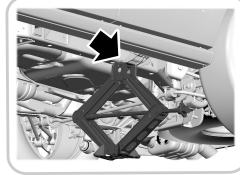
**Note:** Both the front and rear jacking points are on the frame rails. The correct locations on the frame rails are marked with an arrow punched into the frame rail. Jack at the specified locations to avoid damaging your vehicle.

Front jacking point

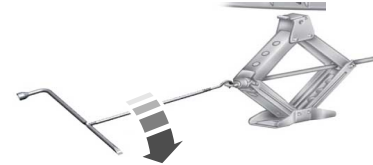
# Changing a Road Wheel



Rear jacking point



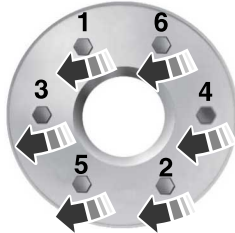
1. Position the jack at the jacking point indicator arrow closest to the flat tire location. Assemble the jack drive extension to the lug wrench as shown and use it to turn the jack drive clockwise to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is completely off the ground.



2. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward.
3. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
4. Completely lower the vehicle by turning the jack drive counterclockwise.
5. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 465).



# Changing a Road Wheel



## Stowing the Flat or Spare Tire

1. Lay the tire on the ground, near the rear of the vehicle, with the valve stem side facing up.
2. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. You may have to remove the wheel center cap prior to pushing the retainer through the center of the wheel. To remove the center cap, press it off with the jack tool from the inner side of the wheel. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
3. Using the swivel wrench, insert it through the access hole behind the third row seat and engage the winch.
4. Turn the swivel wrench clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The wrench becomes harder to turn and the spare tire winch ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to maximum tightness. A clicking sound can be heard from the winch indicating that the tire is properly stowed.
5. Carefully place all tools back into the tool kit bag.
6. Reinstall the tool kit bag on the jack and tighten the straps.
7. Reinstall the jack properly on the bracket and secure with the wing nut.
8. Close the access hole with the rubber plug.
9. If the vehicle has an access panel, reinstall.
10. Unblock the wheel.

## WHEEL NUTS



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt Size	lb.ft (Nm) <sup>1</sup>
M14 x 1.5	150 lb.ft (204 Nm)

<sup>1</sup> Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement wheel nuts and or wheel bolts.

## Changing a Road Wheel

---

Retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque within 100 mi (160 km) after any wheel disturbance, such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.



**A** Hub pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	10.5:1
Displacement.	213.4 in <sup>3</sup> (3,497 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Firing order.	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.028 in (0.7 mm) - 0.031 in (0.8 mm)

# Capacities and Specifications

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-1883
Battery.	BAGM-94RH7
Cabin air filter.	FP-92
Engine oil filter. <sup>1</sup>	FL-500-S
Rear window wiper blade.	WW-1107
Spark plug.	SP-596
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2248

<sup>1</sup> If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at [www.parts.ford.com](http://www.parts.ford.com). We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

# Capacities and Specifications

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.

- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.0 qt (5.7 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Blend Motor Oil(U.S.) Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil / Huile moteur de très haute qualité SAE 5W-30 Motorcraft®(Canada) XO-5W30-Q1SP(U.S.) CXO-5W30-LSP6(Canada)	WSS-M2C961-A1

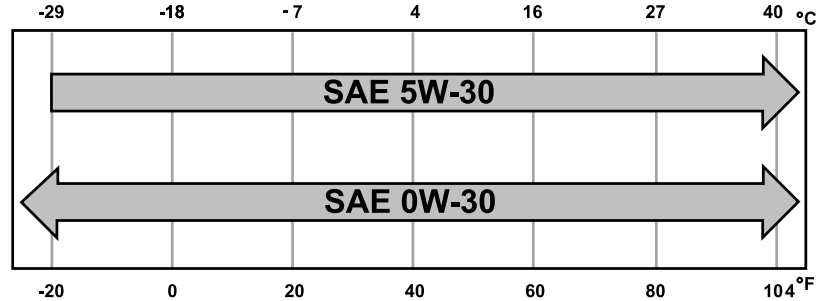
## Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance,  
use the following engine oil in climates  
where the ambient temperature reaches  
-22.0°F (-30°C) or below.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30 - Synthetic Blend	WSS-M2C963-A1

# Capacities and Specifications



## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Base radiator.	15.4 qt (14.6 L)
Standard duty or heavy duty radiator.	15.96 qt (15.1 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft®(Canada) VC-13DL-G(U.S.) CVC-13DL-G(Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2



# Capacities and Specifications

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Base.	24.7 gal (93.5 L)
Navigator L.	30.1 gal (114 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified

personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications.

If you do not use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

### Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	37 oz (1.05 kg)	6.1 fl oz (180 ml)

### Materials

Name	Specification
R-1234yf Refrigerant(U.S.) R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf(Canada) YN-33-A(U.S.) HS7Z-19B519-BA(Canada)	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil(U.S.) Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil / Huile PAG pour frigorigène R-1234yf Motorcraft®(Canada) YN-35(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C300-A2

# Capacities and Specifications

## WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid / Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft®(Canada) ZC-32-B2(U.S.) CXC-37-F/M(Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

# Capacities and Specifications

**Note:** We recommend you use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid(U.S.) Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid / Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft®(Canada) PM-20(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M6C65-A2

# Capacities and Specifications

## TRANSFER CASE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Four-wheel drive.	1.4–1.6 qt (1.3–1.5 L)

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid(U.S.) Motorcraft® MERCON® LV Automatic Transmission Fluid / Huile pour boîte automatique MERCON® LV Motorcraft®(Canada) XT-10-QLVC(U.S.) CXT-10-LV6(Canada)	WSS-M2C938-AMERCON® LV,

# Capacities and Specifications

## FRONT AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Four-wheel drive.	1.8 qt (1.7 L)

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant(U.S.) Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant / Huile synthétique de haute qualité pour engrenages hypoides SAE 75W-85 Motor- craft®(Canada) XY-75W85-QL(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C942-A

# Capacities and Specifications

## REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	2.5 qt (2.4 L)

### Materials

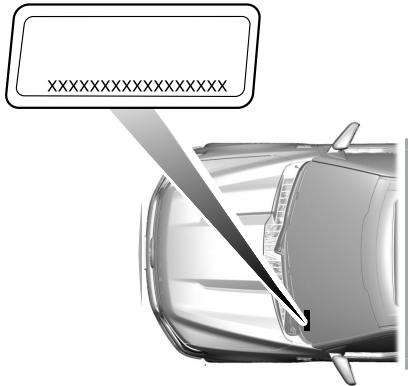
Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant(U.S.) Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant / Huile synthétique de haute qualité pour engrenages hypoides SAE 75W-85 Motorcraft®(Canada) XY-75W85-QL(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C942-A

# Vehicle Identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

### LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

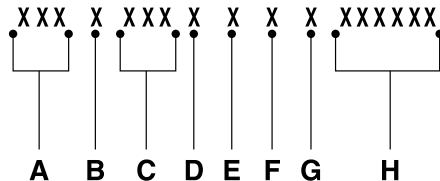
The vehicle identification number is on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



**Note:** In the illustration, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER OVERVIEW

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:



- A World manufacturer identifier.
- B Brake system, gross vehicle weight rating, restraint devices and their locations.
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type.
- D Engine or motor type.
- E Check digit.

- F Model year.
- G Assembly plant.
- H Production sequence number.



# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Lincoln Way app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Lincoln website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require a subscription. For additional information, see the Lincoln Way app. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

## ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.

4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

## CONNECTING LINCOLN WAY TO THE MODEM

[\*Lincoln Way: Vehicle Details Overview\*](#)

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the Lincoln Way app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option for vehicle details.
5. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
6. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your Lincoln Way account.
7. Confirm that your Lincoln Way account is connected to the modem.

# Connected Vehicle

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Connectivity**.
2. Press **Manage Wi-Fi Networks**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View Available Networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why can I not confirm the connection of my Lincoln Way account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Why can I not confirm the connection of my Lincoln Way account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

### Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example, as part of the MAC address.

# Connected Vehicle

---

## **Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?**

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

## **What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?**

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

## **Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?**

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example, WEP.

## **Why do software downloads take too long?**

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

## **Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?**

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

# Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

## CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

**Note:** The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

2. Press **Settings**.
3. Press **Edit**.
4. Press **Hotspot visibility**.

**Note:** The hotspot visibility default setting is on.

### Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

2. Press **Settings**.

**Note:** The network name is the hotspot name.

3. Press **View Password**.

### Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

### Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

**Note:** Secure websites do not redirect.

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

**Note:** If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

**Note:** If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

**Note:** If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

## CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

# Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

---

2. Press **Settings**.
3. Press **Edit**.
4. Press **Change Network Name**.
5. Enter your required network name.
6. Press **Done**.
7. Press **Change Password**.
8. Enter your required password.
9. Press **Done**.

## Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

**Note:** *The vehicle hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will not be able to connect your device to the vehicle hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
2. Press **Settings**.
3. Press **Edit**.
4. Select a frequency.

## VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

### VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

# Audio System

## AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

## IDENTIFYING THE AUDIO UNIT



Depending on your vehicle options, the controls may look different from what you see here.

## SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

### Audio Unit



Press to open the media source menu.

You can press this multiple times to change the audio source or scroll through the media sources.

### Touchscreen

Press **Sources** on the touchscreen to open the media source menu.

## PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

### Audio Unit



Press the button to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

# Audio System

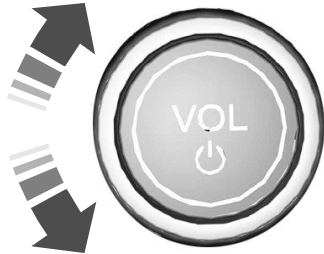
## Touchscreen



Press the button to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

**Note:** *Not all sources can be paused.*

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

## SWITCHING SHUFFLE MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

**Note:** *Not all sources have shuffle mode.*

## SWITCHING REPEAT MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch repeat mode on or off.

**Note:** *Not all sources have repeat mode.*

## SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

1. Select a station or channel.

2. Press and hold a memory preset button on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once it is stored.*

**Note:** *You can save presets from multiple sources to the memory preset bar.*

## MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

## ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

### Balance and Fade (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound Settings**.
3. Press **Balance / Fade**.
4. Press the arrows to adjust the settings.

# Audio System

---

## Tone Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound Settings**.
3. Press **Tone Settings**.
4. Press the arrows or slider bar to adjust the settings.

## Speed Compensated Volume

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound Settings**.
3. Press **Speed Compensated Volume**.
4. Press a setting.

## Occupancy Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound Settings**.
3. Press **Occupancy Mode**.
4. Press a setting.

## Sound Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound Settings**.

3. Press **Sound Mode**.
4. Press a setting.

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock Settings**.
3. Set the time.

**Note:** The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

## Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock Settings**.
3. Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

## AM/FM RADIO

## AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

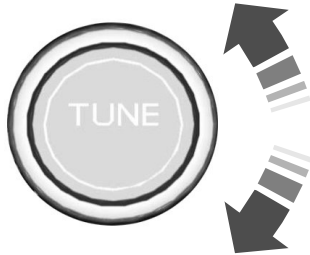
When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.



# Audio System

## SELECTING A RADIO STATION

### Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Turn to search through the radio frequency band.

### Using Direct Tune

1. Press **Direct Tune** to open the number pad.
2. Enter the station you prefer.

**Note:** You can only enter a valid station for the audio source you are currently listening to.

### Using Seek



Press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.

### Using the Station List

1. Press **Browse**.

**Note:** Available on FM radio only.

2. Press a station.

## SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF

### Audio Unit



Press the button.

### Touchscreen

To switch the display off:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Display Settings**.
3. Press **Display Off**.

**Note:** The display defaults to on each time you switch your vehicle on.

To switch the display on, press anywhere on the touchscreen.

## DIGITAL RADIO

### WHAT IS DIGITAL RADIO

HD Radio™ technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio.

For additional information, visit [www.HDRadio.com](http://www.HDRadio.com).

# Audio System

HD Radio Technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of XPERI. The vehicle manufacturer and XPERI are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

## HOW DOES DIGITAL RADIO WORK

Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts in addition to analog broadcasts.

HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in both analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations are only available digitally and could contain new or different content.

**Note:** When the system first receives an HD1 station, it plays the station in the analog version until it verifies the station is an HD Radio station. Then it shifts to the digital version.

**Note:** There is an audio mute delay when switching to an HD2 or HD3 station because the system has to reacquire and decode the digital signal.

## DIGITAL RADIO LIMITATIONS

If you are outside the reception area, the system could not work.

If you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station could mute due to weak signal strength.

**Note:** If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. If you are listening to any other multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.

Depending on the station quality, you could hear a slight sound change when the station changes between analog and digital audio.

You cannot access a saved HD station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.

## SWITCHING DIGITAL RADIO RECEPTION ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Radio Settings**.
3. Switch **AM HD Radio** or **FM HD Radio** on or off.

## DIGITAL RADIO INDICATORS

### HD Radio Indicator

The indicator appears when HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology.



The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

# Audio System

Gray indicates the system is acquiring a digital station.

Orange indicates digital audio is playing.

## Multicast Indicator

The multicast indicator appears if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers indicate additional digital channels available.

**Note:** For stations that have more than one HD multicast, the HD indicator and radio text appears as a button. Press the button to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency.

## SATELLITE RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS SATELLITE RADIO

Your factory-installed SiriusXM radio system includes a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For additional information about extended subscription terms, visit [www.SiriusXM.com](http://www.SiriusXM.com) in the United States, [www.SiriusXM.ca](http://www.SiriusXM.ca) in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Neither SiriusXM and its affiliates nor Ford Motor Company and its affiliates will be liable to you or any third party for any such modification, suspension or termination.

### SATELLITE RADIO LIMITATIONS

For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible. Placing luggage over the antenna may reduce performance. Factory-installed and aftermarket vehicle structures including, but not limited to, roof racks and soft top roofs in a partially open position could reduce reception performance.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.

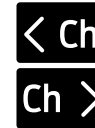
When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and could result in the audio system muting. Your display could show an error message to indicate the interference.

## LOCATING THE SATELLITE RADIO IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

1. Select SiriusXM as the audio source.
2. Tune to channel 0.

## SELECTING A CHANNEL

### Manually Selecting a Channel



Press the button to find the previous or next available radio channel.

# Audio System

---

## Linear Tuner

The linear tuner is displayed when manually selecting a channel. You can swipe left or right on the linear tuner carousel to navigate through the channel list. Tap on a channel title to listen to it.

## Using Direct Tune

1. Press the channel up or down button to open the linear tuner screen.
2. Press **Direct Tune** to open the number pad.
3. Enter the channel you prefer.

## Using Browse

1. Press **Browse**.
2. Select a channel.

## SATELLITE RADIO SETTINGS

### Subscription

Your subscription status is displayed. You can subscribe or manage your subscription directly from the touchscreen.

### SiriusXM Favorites

While you are listening to SiriusXM, you can save favorites by:

- Tapping the currently tuned channel or show logo on the SiriusXM audio screen.
- Tuning to a channel or show you want to save as a favorite. Navigate to the SiriusXM Favorites screen and press the Add Current button. The currently tuned channel or show is saved as a favorite.
- Saving a radio preset. This saves the currently tuned SiriusXM channel or show as a favorite

**Note:** Requires a trial or active subscription to use.

### Listening History

Listening history is a list of recently listened to SiriusXM content. You can view, manage and reset the listening history using the controls on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Requires a trial or active subscription to use.

### Help and Support

You can contact SiriusXM Customer Care directly from SYNC and view information required to manage your SiriusXM account.

# Audio System

## AUDIO SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUDIO SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

#### Satellite Radio Troubleshooting

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Connectivity Disabled	Internet streaming and On Demand shows are unavailable and some SiriusXM features are disabled.	Internet connectivity is turned off. See <b>Connected Vehicle</b> (page 481).
No Internet	Audio system may mute. Switch to Satellite button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via satellite.	SYNC attempts to connect. See <b>Satellite Radio Limitations</b> (page 491). Switch to a satellite connection for the current channel if the option is available.
No Satellite Signal	Audio system may mute. Switch to Internet button may be displayed on the SiriusXM audio screen if the channel is also available via streaming.	Antenna may be obstructed or satellite reception is weak in your location. See <b>Satellite Radio Limitations</b> (page 491). Switch to an internet connection for the current channel if the option is available.
Slow Network Connection	Audio system may mute while the audio attempts to load.	Allow some time for the audio to load or tune to a different channel.

# Audio System

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Channel Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to tune to the channel. If the issue continues, the channel may no longer be available.
Episode Unavailable	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	A temporary update may be in progress. Allow some time before retrying to play the episode. If the issue continues, the episode may no longer be available.
Something went wrong	Audio system may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	Allow some time and retry the action.
Subscribe to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	<p>Your subscription has expired or you have not yet subscribed for access to the listed content. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit <a href="http://www.siriusxm.com/refresh">www.siriusxm.com/refresh</a> in the US, or <a href="http://www.siriusxm.ca/refresh">www.siriusxm.ca/refresh</a> in Canada.</p> <p>You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See <b>Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number</b> (page 491).</p>

# Audio System

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Upgrade to Listen	Cannot listen to selected content. Content may appear grayed out and some features may be disabled.	Your subscription does not include access to the listed content. You may need to upgrade your subscription. Navigate to Subscription under the Satellite Radio Settings menu. If you have an active subscription which includes the listed channel or content and you see this error, you may need to refresh your radio. To refresh your SiriusXM radio, visit <a href="http://www.siriusxm.com/refresh">www.siriusxm.com/refresh</a> in the US, or <a href="http://www.siriusxm.ca/refresh">www.siriusxm.ca/refresh</a> in Canada. You may need to provide your SiriusXM Radio identification number. See <b>Locating the Satellite Radio Identification Number</b> (page 491).
Location Restricted Content	Audio may mute. Not available in your location or Unable to determine your location may be displayed.	Content is not available in your location or SiriusXM is unable to determine your location. Tuning to a different channel may resolve the issue.
Channel Blocked	Audio may mute. Radio may tune to a different channel.	The Block Explicit Content filter is turned on. Navigate to Listener Settings under the Satellite Radio Settings menu to access the Block Explicit Content filter. Navigate to Listener Settings. See <b>Satellite Radio Settings</b> (page 492).

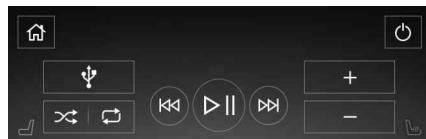
# Audio System

Error Message	Potential Effects	Recommended Action
Antenna Problem or Hardware Problem	Audio may mute. Access to SiriusXM features may be unavailable.	If issue persists, you may need to visit an authorized dealer for service.
SiriusXM Updating...	Audio may mute.	Allow SiriusXM some time to complete updating.
Loading...	Audio may mute. Content may be temporarily unavailable while loading.	No action necessary. If loading time is longer than usual, See <b>Satellite Radio Settings</b> (page 492).
SiriusXM Loading...	Audio may mute. Content and controls may be temporarily unavailable.	No action necessary. Allow SiriusXM some time to finish loading.



# Rear Passenger Audio Controls

## IDENTIFYING THE REAR PASSENGER AUDIO CONTROLS



**Note:** Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.



Press the icon on the touchscreen to access the audio control features.

## SWITCHING THE REAR PASSENGER AUDIO CONTROLS ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

Press the Source button to open the media source menu.

You can press the Source button multiple times to change the audio source or scroll through the media sources.

## PLAYING AND PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE



Press the button to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

**Note:** Not all sources can be paused.

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Press the buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the volume for the rear passenger audio.



## SWITCHING SHUFFLE MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

**Note:** Not all sources have shuffle mode.

## SWITCHING REPEAT MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch repeat mode on or off.

**Note:** Not all sources have repeat mode.

## CHANGING THE RADIO STATION



In radio mode, select a frequency band and press and release either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.



# Center Display Overview

## CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

### Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, some features are not available while the vehicle is in motion at or above 5 mph (8 km/h). Settings that are not critical while driving your vehicle are shown as restricted on your display. Some of these settings include:

- Software updates.
- Personal profiles setup.
- Valet mode setup.
- Driver assistance settings.
- MyKey setup.
- Door keypad code setup.

These restricted features become available when your vehicle is no longer in motion.

## STATUS BAR

### [\*Lincoln SYNC 4 Basics\*](#)

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

### Audio System



Audio system muted.

### Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Media player connected using **Bluetooth®**.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Unread email message.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

### Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.

# Center Display Overview



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

## Vehicle Software Update



Vehicle software update available.



Vehicle software update requires schedule.



Vehicle software update requires consent.



Vehicle software update requires Wi-Fi.



Vehicle software update schedule reminder.



Vehicle software update not successful.



Vehicle software update successful.

## Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

## FEATURE BAR

The feature bar is located on the bottom of the display and allows you to access vehicle features.



Press to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a **Bluetooth®** device.



Press to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone.



Press to use the navigation system.



Press to replace this button with a shortcut to a feature or setting.



Press to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device.



Press to adjust system settings.



Press to view features.



**Note:** The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.

# Center Display Overview

---

## INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.



Press the button to view the next card.



Press the button to view the previous card.



Press the button to view available cards.

You can swipe toward the main screen to move the content into the main screen.

**Note:** *This can only be done with some information on demand screens.*

## REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and audio system power button for 10 seconds.

# Voice Interaction

## LINCOLN PERSONAL ASSISTANT

### USING LINCOLN PERSONAL ASSISTANT

The digital assistant allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

To begin a voice interaction using the wake word, say the selected wake word, then say your command.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

**Note:** You may need to enable your vehicle's modem to use certain voice commands. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 481).

**Note:** When you are not driving, additional commands are available by using popular chat applications. Use *LincolnWay* to setup a conversation with your Lincoln assistant.

### Voice Command Examples

To see examples of what voice commands you can use with different features:



Press the button on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Lincoln Assistant**.
2. Press **Voice Command Help**.
3. Select a feature.

### LINCOLN PERSONAL ASSISTANT SETTINGS

To access the settings menu:



Press the button on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Lincoln Assistant**.

From the settings menu you can do the following:

- Switch listen for wake word on or off.
- Set the preferred wake word.
- Switch advance mode on or off.
- Switch phone confirmation on or off.

- Switch the commands list on or off.
- View the commands help menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

### LINCOLN PERSONAL ASSISTANT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why does the system not understand what I am saying?

- You are speaking too soon. When using the button of the steering wheel, wait for the tone before you speak.

# Voice Interaction

---

## **Why does the system not understand the name of a track or artist?**

- **Bluetooth®** does not support voice commands. Connect your device to a USB port.
- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The system does not recognize some special characters contained in the name of a song or artist, for example \*, - or +. Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

## **Why does the system not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact?**

- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The name contains special characters, for example \*, - or +. Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.

## **Why does the system not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device?**

- The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.

## **Why do the system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words not seem accurate?**

- The system uses text-to-speech technology and a synthetically generated voice rather than a pre-recorded human voice.

# Alexa Built-In

## WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

## ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle modem is enabled.
- You are logged into an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing is enabled.

## SIGNING INTO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Get Started**.
4. Sign into your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.
5. Once logged in, follow the on-screen prompts.
6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

## Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Sign Out**.

## USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

**Note:** If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

## ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

### Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on or off.

**Note:** If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.

### Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

To change the contact sharing status:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Contact List**.
4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

**Note:** *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

**Note:** *If a contact list is not shared, hands-free calling does not work via Alexa.*

## Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Things to Try**.



# Phone

## PHONE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch **Bluetooth®** on.



Press the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Add Phone**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

### Recent Call List

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

## Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

## Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

## Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

## Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

## Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

**Note:** Up to 12 devices can be stored.

# Phone

---

## ***Do Not Disturb***

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

## ***Phone Keypad***

Directly dial a number.

## **Voice Control**

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

**Note:** *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

# Phone

## MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

### Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favorites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

### Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

**Note:** You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

### During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

# Phone

---

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Privacy	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

# Phone

## SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Hear It	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

## SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

### iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Connectivity**.
4. Press **Bluetooth**.
5. Press **Add a Bluetooth Device**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

6. Select your vehicle on your device.

**Note:** A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

7. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device.



Press the audio button on the feature bar.



Press **Sources**.



Press the **Bluetooth®** option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

## APP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through

the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

## ACCESSING APPS



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

## ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Select Mobile Apps Help.
2. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.
4. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Some apps may run through Apple CarPlay if it is enabled.

**Note:** Closing an app on your device will close it on the touchscreen.

**Note:** For troubleshooting assistance select Mobile Apps List under Mobile Apps Help.

## ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Select Mobile Apps Help.
2. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.
4. Select **Find Mobile Apps**.



5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

**Note:** Some apps may run through Android Auto if it is enabled.

**Note:** Closing an app on your device will close it on the touchscreen.

**Note:** For troubleshooting assistance select Mobile Apps List under Mobile Apps Help.

## SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

### Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.

### Enabling Apple CarPlay with Wireless

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

### Disabling Apple CarPlay



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Disable.

### Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Connect to Apple CarPlay.

## SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

### Enabling Android Auto with USB (if Equipped)

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

### Enabling Android Auto with Wireless

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

### Disabling Android Auto



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.

2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Disable.

## Re-Enabling Android Auto



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Connect to Android Auto.

# Personal Profiles

---

## HOW DO PERSONAL PROFILES WORK

This feature allows you to create multiple personal profiles enabling users to personalize vehicle's settings such as seats and mirrors, as well as non-positional settings like radio, navigation, driver assist system settings. Positional settings are saved by holding a memory seat button. Non-positional settings are saved you change a setting while a profile is active. You can create one profile for each preset memory seat button along with a guest profile.

### Recalling and Changing a Profile

You can recall a profile using the touchscreen or the preset button you selected when you created your profile. You can also link a remote control and a mobile device to your profile, which are used to recall it.

## ENABLING OR DISABLING PERSONAL PROFILES

When you switch on the Personal Profiles feature:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device that is not linked to a driver profile does not change the active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting does not change the active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It does not change the positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile but is saved to a preset setting does not change the active profile, but remains in the last known profile. It recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

When you switch off a Personal Profiles feature:

- Unlocking a door with a remote control or mobile device does not recall any non-positional settings but still recalls positional settings from the driver profile which the remote control or mobile device is linked to.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is not linked to a driver profile or saved to a preset setting does not change the positional or non-positional settings.
- Pressing a memory seat button that is linked to a driver profile or has saved to a preset setting recalls the positional settings that you saved to that memory seat button.

## CREATING A PERSONAL PROFILE

Use the touchscreen to create a personal profile.

1. Switch the vehicle on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. Select the Personal Profiles button under Settings.

# Personal Profiles

---

3. Follow the instructions on the display.

## LINKING OR UNLINKING A PERSONAL PROFILE TO A REMOTE CONTROL

You can save preset memory positions for up to three remote controls by assigning a remote control to a personal profile using the touchscreen.

Use the touchscreen to link a remote control to a personal profile.

1. Switch the vehicle on and leave the vehicle in park (P).
2. Select the Personal Profiles button under Settings.
3. Touch the arrow for the profile you wish to link to a remote control.
4. Select remote control.
5. Follow the instructions on the display.

**Note:** *If more than one linked remote control is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.*

**Note:** *The guest profile consists of existing settings when there is no driver profile created. After you create a driver profile, the guest profile serves as an additional driver profile.*

**Note:** *You cannot link a remote control to a guest profile.*

# Navigation

## CONNECTED NAVIGATION (IF

### EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with connected navigation. Depending on your version, you are given a 90 day or 3 year trial. After the trial period, you need to sign up to continue the experience. For additional information, visit [lincoln.com/connectedservices](https://lincoln.com/connectedservices).

**Note:** If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.

## ACCESSING NAVIGATION



Press the button to access Navigation.

**Note:** As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.

## NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact dealers at 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada, or 800-557-5539 in Mexico.

**Note:** If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to [www.here.com/mapcreator](https://www.here.com/mapcreator).

## ADJUSTING THE MAP

### ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

## CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP



Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Map Orientation tile.
2. Select a map orientation.

## LIVE TRAFFIC

### WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

### SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF



Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Traffic on Map tile.
2. Press Traffic on or Traffic Off.

# Navigation

## SETTING A DESTINATION

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
3. Press Search.
4. Select a destination from the list.
5. Press Start to begin navigation.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

Press and hold on the map to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.



Press the button to begin navigation to the pin.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Press the Recents tile.
3. Select a destination from the list.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Press Saved Places.
3. Select a saved destination.

**Note:** Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

### SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

Press on a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.



Press the button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

## WAYPOINTS

### ADDING A WAYPOINT



Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

**Note:** You can also search for a waypoint through your recent trips, saved trips, and points of interest.

## EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

## ROUTE GUIDANCE

### ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

### REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

### CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

# Vehicle Software Updates

---

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 482). See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 482).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours. Check your touchscreen or connected device for the most accurate estimated update time.

You are notified of the status of the vehicle software update in the touchscreen and on your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 521).

## Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

## Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Lock, unlock or enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
  - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Start your vehicle.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Use the alarm, central locks or door tones.
- Use the electronic door locks.
- Charge your vehicle.
  - Charging resumes once the update completes.

## SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:



# Vehicle Software Updates

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Software Updates**.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

## Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we do not recommend switching Automatic Updates off.

**Note:** Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.

## Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

### Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Schedule Updates**.
2. Select the days and time for updates.
3. Press **Save**.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

**Note:** *The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.*

## Installing Software Updates

### Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

### Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.
2. Press **Update Now**.

## Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.

## SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.

# Vehicle Software Updates

---



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

# Vehicle System Reset

---

## PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore settings to their factory defaults.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.
4. Press **Master Reset**.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.

# Accessories

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store website:

<b>Web Address (United States)</b>
<a href="https://accessories.lincoln.com/">https://accessories.lincoln.com/</a>

<b>Web Address (Canada)</b>
<a href="http://www.lincolncanada.com">www.lincolncanada.com</a>

We will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Lincoln Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

We will warrant your Lincoln Original Accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

## Lincoln Licensed Accessories

The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Lincoln Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Lincoln engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Lincoln dealer for the accessory manufacturer's limited warranty details and request a copy of the Lincoln Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer. See your warranty guide for more information.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that have radio transmitters, for example two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should only be installed by an authorized dealer.

## Accessories

---

- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if their manufacturer did not design them specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Lincoln dealer add any non-Lincoln electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

# Lincoln Protect

---

## WHAT IS LINCOLN PROTECT

Protect yourself from the rising cost of vehicle repairs with the Lincoln Protect extended service plan.

### Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plans (United States Only)

Lincoln Protect means peace of mind. It is the extended service plan backed by Lincoln, and provides more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Lincoln Dealer, insist on genuine Lincoln Protect extended service plans.

### Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plan Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One trip to the Service Center could easily exceed the price of your Lincoln Protect extended service plan. With Lincoln Protect, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

## Up to 1000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four mechanical Lincoln Protect extended service plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it is probably easier to list what is not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Lincoln Protect extended service plans are honored by all authorized Lincoln dealers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Lincoln or Ford dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

## Rental Car Reimbursement

### *First Day Rental Benefit*

If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we will give you a rental vehicle to use for the day.

### *Extended Rental Benefits*

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including bumper to bumper warranty repairs, and field service actions.

## Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and other transportation.

# Lincoln Protect

---

## Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Lincoln Protect extended service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. This should give you and your potential buyer a little more peace of mind.

## Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle

The Lincoln Protect extended service plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc - if equipped.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers and struts.
- Engine cooling hoses, clamps and o-rings.

- Engine belts.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment - if equipped.

## Interest Free Finance Options

Just a 5% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Lincoln Protect extended service plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Lincoln Protect extended service plan specialists at 800-367-3377.

Complete the information below and mail to:

Lincoln Protect Extended Service Plan  
P.O. Box 321067  
Detroit, MI 48232

## Lincoln Protect (Canada Only)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Lincoln Protect extended service plan. The Lincoln Protect extended service plan is the only service contract backed by Lincoln, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, the Lincoln Protect extended service plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

# Lincoln Protect

---

There are several Lincoln Protect extended service plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase a Lincoln Protect extended service plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Lincoln dealers.

**Note:** *Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Lincoln Protect extended service plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information, visit your local Lincoln of Canada dealer or [www.LincolnCanada.com](http://www.LincolnCanada.com) to find the Lincoln Protect extended service plan that is right for you.



# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes: first is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep the cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 467).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

#### Our Genuine Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock our parts and our authorized branded remanufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use our authorized parts, they may not meet our specifications and could affect emissions compliance.

### Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle comes with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, a message appears in the instrument cluster display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km), hybrid vehicles could exceed 10,000 mi (16,000 km).

When the oil change message appears in the instrument cluster display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of the message appearing. Make sure to reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See **Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor** (page 418).

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

If your instrument cluster display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5,000 mi (8,000 km) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between oil change intervals.

You can drive your vehicle in such a way that may lead to higher oil consumption including extended time at high engine speeds, high loads, engine braking, hard cornering maneuvers, track and off-road usage. Under these conditions, oil consumption of approximately 1 quart per 500 miles (1 liter per 800 km) is possible. Check the engine oil level at every refueling and adjust to maintain proper levels to avoid engine damage.

You can also drive your vehicle in such a way that dilutes and increases the level of oil by frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, extended idling and low speed driving for long periods of time.

It is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

We strongly recommend only using our genuine or our authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

## Additives and Chemicals

We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

## Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. Have discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination checked immediately.

Make sure to change the vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using our approved flushing chemical.

## Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections.

## Scheduled Maintenance

Check Every Month
The air filter restriction gauge. <sup>1</sup>
The engine oil level.
Function of all interior and the exterior lights.
The tires including the spare for wear and proper pressure.
The windshield washer fluid level.
The fuel and water separator. Drain if necessary or if indicated by the instrument cluster display. <sup>1</sup>
The holes and slots in the tail pipe to make sure they are functional and clear of debris. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Diesel vehicles only.

Check Every Six Months
The battery connections. Clean if necessary.
The body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
The cooling system fluid level and the coolant system strength.
The door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
The hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Check Every Six Months
The parking brake for proper operation.
The seatbelts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps, brake, ABS, airbag and seatbelt for operation.
The washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

## Multi-Point Inspection

It is important to have the systems on your vehicle regularly checked. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Multi-Point Inspection	
Accessory drive belt or belts	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses

# Scheduled Maintenance

Multi-Point Inspection	
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels <sup>1</sup> ; fill if necessary	Tires including the spare for wear and proper pressure <sup>2</sup>
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Halfshaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

<sup>1</sup> Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer.

<sup>2</sup> If your vehicle has a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

## NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

### Oil Change Reminder

Your vehicle comes with an oil change reminder that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how you use your vehicle.

Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

# Scheduled Maintenance

When to expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED Message	
Interval	Vehicle Use and Example
7,500–10,000 mi (12,000–16,000 km)	Normal
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5,000–7,500 mi (8,000–12,000 km)	Severe
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation
3,000–5,000 mi (5,000–8,000 km)	Extreme
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

# Scheduled Maintenance

## Normal Maintenance Intervals

At Every Oil Change Interval as Indicated by the Information Display <sup>1</sup>
Change the engine oil and filter. <sup>2</sup>
Rotate the tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.
Perform a multi-point inspection - recommended.
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level - vehicles with dipstick. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, rotors, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the front axle and U-joints.
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and U-joints.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

<sup>1</sup> Do not exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between service intervals.

<sup>2</sup> Reset the oil change reminder after engine oil and filter changes.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Brake Fluid Maintenance <sup>1</sup>	
Every Three Years	Change the brake fluid. <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perform this maintenance item every three years. Do not exceed the designated time for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Brake fluid servicing requires special equipment available at your authorized dealer.

Other Maintenance Items <sup>1</sup>	
Every 20,000 mi (32,000 km)	Replace the cabin air filter.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Replace the engine air filter.
Every 100,000 mi (160,000 km)	Replace the spark plugs.
	Inspect the accessory drive belt(s). <sup>2</sup>
Every 150,000 mi (240,000 km)	Change the automatic transmission fluid.
	Change the front axle fluid - Four-wheel drive vehicles.
	Change the rear axle fluid.
	Change the transfer case fluid - Four-wheel drive vehicles.



# Scheduled Maintenance

Other Maintenance Items <sup>1</sup>	
	Replace the accessory drive belt(s).
Every 200,000 mi (320,000 km)	Change the engine coolant. <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Perform these maintenance items within 5,000 mi (4,800 km) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

<sup>3</sup> Initial replacement at 10 years or 200,000 mi (320,000 km), then every 5 years or 100,000 mi (160,000 km).

## SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance, as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3,000 mi (4,800 km) of the message appearing in the instrument cluster display prompting you to change your oil.

- **Example 1:** The message comes on at 28,751 mi (46,270 km). Perform the 30,000 mi (48,000 km) automatic transmission fluid replacement.
- **Example 2:** The message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30,000 mi (48,000 km) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25,000 mi (40,000 km)). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

## Scheduled Maintenance

Towing a Trailer or Using a Car-top Carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the instrument cluster display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect and lubricate U-joints (if equipped with grease fittings).
	See axle maintenance items under <b>Exceptions</b> .
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (Four-wheel drive vehicles).
	Replace spark plugs.

Extensive Idling or Low-speed Driving for Long Distances, as in Heavy Commercial Use (Such as Delivery, Taxi, Patrol Car or Livery) Short Trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature causing fuel dilution and an increase of the engine oil level	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the instrument cluster display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace engine air filter.
	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (Four-wheel drive vehicles).
	Replace spark plugs.

## Scheduled Maintenance

Operating in Dusty or Sandy Conditions (Such as Unpaved or Dusty Roads)	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace engine air filter.
	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter. <sup>1</sup>
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (Four-wheel drive vehicles).

<sup>1</sup> Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each engine oil and filter change.

Off-road Operation	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect steering linkage, ball joints and U-joints. Lubricate if equipped with grease fittings.
	Replace engine air filter.
	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter. <sup>1</sup>
	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

# Scheduled Maintenance

Off-road Operation	
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Change transfer case fluid (Four-wheel drive vehicles).

<sup>1</sup> Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each engine oil and filter change.

## Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule.

### Axle and Transfer Case Maintenance

Axle(s) and transfer case (Four-wheel drive vehicles) fluid changes or level checks are not required unless a leak is suspected or the assembly has been submerged in water. Contact an authorized dealer for service.

### California Fuel Filter Replacement

If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Lincoln, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

### Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 3,000 mi (4,800 km).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 1,800 mi (2,900 km).

### Engine Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter.

## Customer Information

### ROLLOVER WARNING



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

### THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU AUTO LINE PROGRAM - UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator considers the testimony provided and makes a decision after the hearing.

## Customer Information

---

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

**BBB AUTO LINE Application:** Using the information that follows, call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that needs to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB reviews the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE a Division of BBB National Programs, Inc.  
1676 International Drive, Suite 550  
McLean, VA 22102**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

For additional information, refer to the Better Business Bureau website.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

### **THE MEDIATION AND ARBITRATION PROGRAM - CANADA**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straightforward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

## Customer Information

---

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

### **ORDERING A CANADIAN FRENCH OWNER'S MANUAL**

You can obtain a French owner's manual from an authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, LLC at:

HELM, LLC  
47911 Halyard Drive, Suite 200  
Plymouth, Michigan 48170  
Attention: Customer Service

Call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

For additional information, visit  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

### **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN THE UNITED STATES**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

## Customer Information

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN CANADA

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect

which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website (English)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/recalls">http://tc.canada.ca/recalls</a>
Website (French)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/rappels">http://tc.canada.ca/rappels</a>
Phone	1-800-333-0510

Lincoln of Canada Contact Information	
Website	<a href="http://www.LincolnCanada.com">www.LincolnCanada.com</a>
Phone	1-800-387-9333



# Customer Information

---

## RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

**Argentina**



**Belarus**



**Brazil**



**Canada**

Short Range Radar Sensor SRR3-B

IC ID: 4135A-SRR3B

# Customer Information

---

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure information:

This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and the body of any persons, user or bystander.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 8 in (20 cm) de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

## Customer Information

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 240/MCPT/SG/16  
Date d'agrément : 23/05/2016

### Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: 3R8-8M-7DF-231

### Malaysia



### European Union EU



### Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA - SRR3-B.

RALM/24A/0715/S(15-2272)

## Customer Information

### Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0727/ARE/2018  
Date d'agrément : 10/12/2019

### Moldova



### Paraguay



### Mexico

IFETEL: RLVCSR15-0904

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:

- (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
- (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

### Pakistan



### Russia



## Customer Information

---

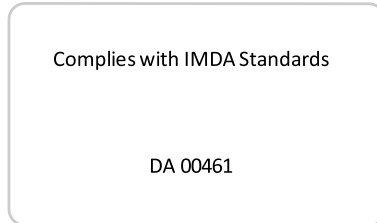
### Serbia



### South Africa



### Singapore



### South Korea

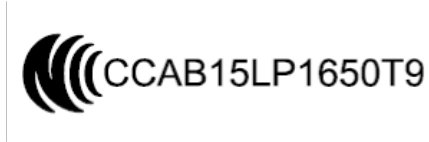


MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3B

# Customer Information

---

## Taiwan, China



### 警語

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

## Customer Information

---

### Ukraine



справжнім fIDC. Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH заявляє, що тип радіобладнання SRR3 - В відповідає технічному регламенту радіобладнання;

повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою :

<http://continental.automotive-approvals.com/>

## Customer Information

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER62934

DEALER No:  
DA40068

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### CAUTION TO USERS

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### Vietnam

Ford Viet Nam Limited  
A0844230815AFEN42



### United Kingdom



### United States of America

FCC ID: OAYSRR3B

### Zambia





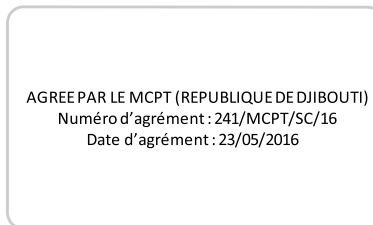
# Customer Information

## BODY CONTROL MODULE

### Argentina



### Djibouti



### Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA - M3NA2C738448.

### Mauritania



### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: NCA/TA/16/23

## Customer Information

### Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément: MR 8925 ANRT 2014  
Date d'agrément: 04/02/2014

### Paraguay



### South Africa



### Pakistan

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority



Approved by PTA 2016

2018-08-I-000410

2013-08-I-0158

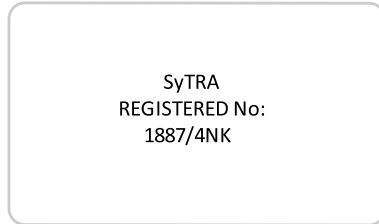
### South Korea



# Customer Information

2013-07-03

## Syria



## Ukraine

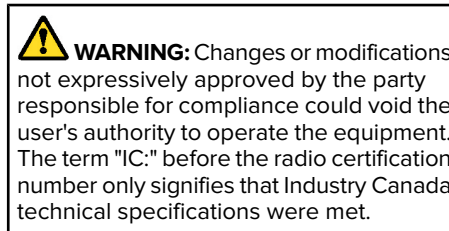


This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## Vietnam

## United States and Canada



FCC ID: M3NA2C738448

IC: 7812A-A2C738448



## Customer Information

### Zambia



### CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

### Argentina



### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 059/DDTIC/2020  
Date d'agrément : 01/10/2020

### Brazil



### EAC Marking - Russia, Belarus, Kazakhstan



# Customer Information

## Europe Union EU



## Independent State Of Samoa



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – F3TR.

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X13

## Israel

המכשיר האלקטרוני בעל התכונות המפורטות להלן, נבדקו במעבדת המחקר האלקטרוני תאגידית המכשירים והתקנים – 2021, לפי סדרת סעי' 87  
בדיונים להקמת:  
1. משרד המידע:  
יצרן: Aptiv Services US LLC  
דגם: L3CF3TR  
סדרת עבודה:  
תאריך: 14-06-2023  
2. אשורן זה מבטיח כי כלים ילא יאבדו יבטל כ"י סטודיו התקשורת.

השקע (מטק)	תאריך פירוק (מטק)
4,576,000	76,028,000

## Malaysia



# Customer Information

HIDF16000009

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0835/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2020

## Moldova



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément:  
MR00030034ANRT2021

Date d'agrément: 16/09/2021

## Pakistan



## Paraguay



2020-10-I-0752

# Customer Information

---

## Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0028

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## South Korea



R-C-1Ap-F3TR

## South Africa



## Customer Information

### Taiwan



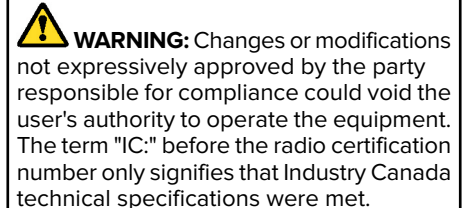
### Ukraine



### United Kingdom



### United States and Canada



FCC ID: L2CF3TR

IC: 3432A-F3TR

### Thailand

1. ***This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.***
2. ***This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.***

### Unites Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)





## Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### Zambia



### KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

#### Argentina



#### Brazil



## Customer Information



Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

02444-16-01821

### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 2R9-8M-7E0-x94

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931423

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 287/MCPT/SC/16  
Date d'agrément : 02/07/2016

**NCA APPROVED: 2R9-1H-7E0-01A**

### Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA – A2C97102000

**This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA – A2C93142100**

### Malaysia



F17000176

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 289/MCPT/SC/116  
Date d'agrément : 02/07/2016

## Customer Information

### Mauritania

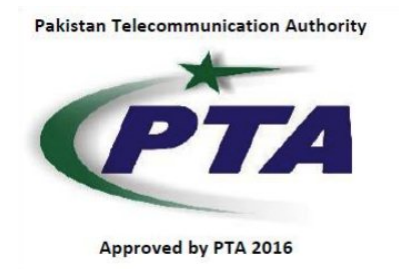
AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0324/ARE/2016  
Date d'agrément : 07/03/2016

### Moldova



AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 12433 ANRT 2016  
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2016

### Pakistan



### Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0323/ARE/2016  
Date d'agrément : 07/03/2016

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 12432 ANRT 2016  
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2016

# Customer Information

## Paraguay

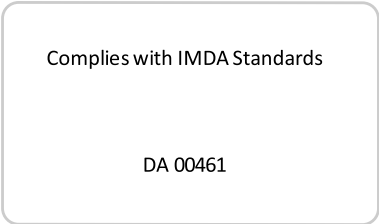


NR: 2016-9-I-000222  
NR: 2016-9-I-000220  
NR: 2016-9-I-000223

## Serbia



## Singapore



## South Africa



## Customer Information

---

### South Korea



MSIP-CRM-TAL-A2C97102000

### Taiwan



### Ukraine



### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA  
REGISTERED No: ER47690/16  
DEALER No: DA37380/15

## Customer Information

TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER46754/16

DEALER No:  
DA37380/15

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### Zambia



### United States and Canada

**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

### Vietnam



# Customer Information

## RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

### Argentina

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-24930

### Brazil

 **ANATEL**

Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações

10693-20-12270

### Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéros d'agrément : 033/DDTIC/2020  
Date d'agrément : 07/06/2020

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéros d'agrément : 034/DDTIC/2020  
Date d'agrément : 07/06/2020

### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-108

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-114

### Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément: 0803/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément: 03/06/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0802/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

# Customer Information

## Moldova



## Pakistan



## South Africa



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24102 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 18/05/2020

## Serbia



## Taiwan, China





## Customer Information

### Ukraine



TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER81342/20

DEALER No:  
DA88113/20

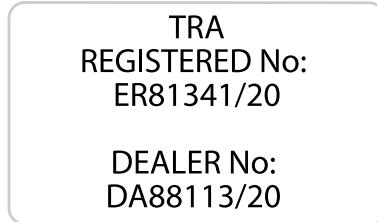
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

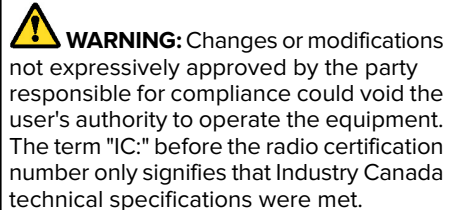
### Zambia



### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



### United States and Canada



FCC ID: L2C0082R

FCC ID: L2C0083TR

IC: 342A-0083TR

# Customer Information

**SYNC**

**Argentina**

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

**CNC ID: C-24008**

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

**CNC ID: C-24009**

**Brazil**



08657-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção  
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar  
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção  
contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar  
interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

**Djibouti**

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

# Customer Information

## European Union EU



## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

## Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493

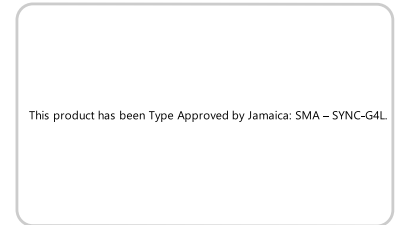


Model: SYNC-G4L  
Sertifikat Nomor: **81116**/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.



This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4L

## Customer Information

### Malaysia



SQASI/TA/19/4047

SQASI/TA/19/4046

### Mauritania

**AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE**  
**Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018**  
**Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019**

### Moldova



### Morocco

**AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC**  
**N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019**  
**07 AOUT 2019**

**AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC**  
**N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019**  
**07 AOUT 2019**

# Customer Information

## Pakistan



2020-03-I-00192

2020-03-I-00193

## Serbia



## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## Paraguay



## South Africa



## Customer Information

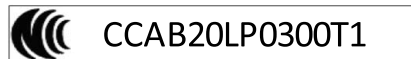
### Taiwan



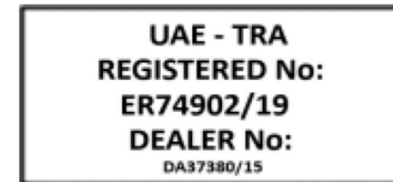
### Ukraine



### South Korea



### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



## Customer Information

TRA  
REGISTERED No: ER74903/19  
DEALER No: DA37380/15

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



### United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

### Zambia



# Customer Information

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: 315 MHZ SENSORS

### Argentina

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNC ID: H-24068

### Brazil

 **ANATEL**  
Agência Nacional de Telecomunicações  
**05160-16-08001**

### Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – FP3

### Mexico

IFT: RLVSCFP16-1400  
"La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:  
(1) es posible que este  
equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y  
(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar  
cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar  
su operación no deseada."

### Paraguay

 **CONATEL**

NR: 2016-8-I-000193



## Customer Information

### United Kingdom



### United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXFP3

IC: 2546A-FP3

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: 433 MHZ SENSORS

### Argentina



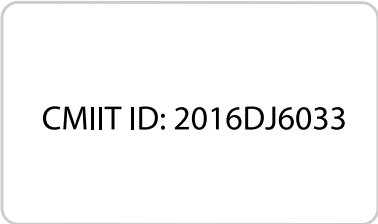
CNC ID: H-16630

# Customer Information

China

Djibouti

European Union (EU)



## Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HIR-0099/09/2016

Date d'homologation: 15/09/2016

# Customer Information

---

The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type FP4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

[http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration\\_conformities](http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities)

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 2R9-8M-7E0-0BE

# Customer Information

## Independent State of Samoa



## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0358/ARE/2016  
Date d'agrément : 04/10/2016

## Nigeria

Connection and use of this  
communications  
equipment is permitted by the Nigerian  
Communications Commission

## Israel

1. טעמי היצוא :  
SCHRADER ELECTRONICS LTD : יצרן  
FP4 : דגם  
מסדר : סוג ציוד

המספר (הואט)	החומר הנדרש (סח"י)	
0.000010	434.7900	433.0500

2. אישור זה בתוקף עד ליום 19/12/2023 אלא אם יבוטל ע"י משרד התקשורת.

## Moldova

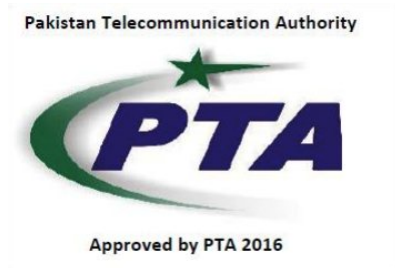


## Oman

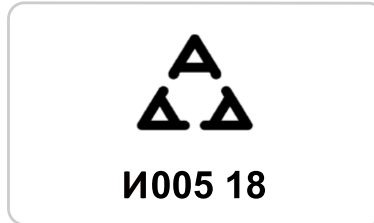
OMAN TRA  
TA-R/3591/16  
D080134

## Customer Information

### Pakistan



### Serbia



TAN: 2016-002-0035

### South Korea



### Ukraine



### Paraguay



### Sierra Leone



## Customer Information

### United Arab Emirates

TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER48598/16

DEALER No.  
DA0047074

### WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE

#### Argentina

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26491

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26492

### United Kingdom

**UK  
CA**

**CNC** COMISIÓN NACIONAL  
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26493

# Customer Information

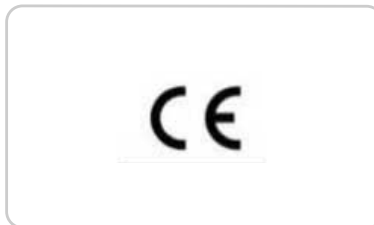
## Brazil



## Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC  
N° d'homologation : HER-0054/Juin/2021  
Date d'homologation : 02/06/2021

## European Union



## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR

## Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



Model: WCFDM00N2A3  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



# Customer Information

Model: WCFDM00N2A5  
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022  
PLG ID: 13493



## Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80014
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במבשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המבשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 51-80015
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במבשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המבשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA - WCFDM00N2A.

## Malaysia



RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2033)

RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2032)



# Customer Information

RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2031)

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0935/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0933/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027924ANRT 2021  
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

## Moldova



AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0934/ARE/2021  
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027925ANRT 2021  
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

# Customer Information

2021-04-I-0203  
2021-04-I-0202

Russia



Serbia



I005 21

Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0099

Paraguay



2021-04-I-0204

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

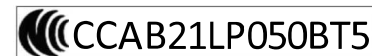
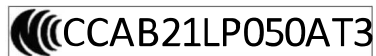
## Customer Information

---

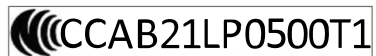
### South Africa

R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1

### Taiwan



### South Korea



## Customer Information

**品名(Product name):** 無線充電座

**型號 (Type Designation):** WCFDM00N2A1, WCFDM00N2A3, WCFDM00N2A5 **產地 (Origin):** 馬來西亞

**額定電壓(Input rating):** 12V

**製造日期 (Approval date):** 2021.04.21



**申請廠商名稱(Approval name):** 福特六和汽車股份有限公司

**申請廠商地址(Approval address):** 桃園市中壢區中華路一段705號

### Ukraine



### United Kingdom



### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER98638/21

DEALER No:

DA37380/15

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER00421/21

DEALER No:

DA37380/15

# Customer Information

---

TRA REGISTERED No:  
ER00422/21

DEALER No:  
DA37380/15

**United States and Canada**  
FCC ID: BEJWCDFM00N2A  
IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

*Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:*

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

# Customer Information

## Zambia



## PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:  
[www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

### Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## Customer Information

### MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when

using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

### FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION REGULATION

Regulations such as those issued by the Federal Highway Administration or issued pursuant to the Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA), and state and local laws and regulations may require additional equipment for the way you intend to use your vehicle. It is the responsibility of the registered owner to determine the applicability of such laws and regulations to your intended use for the vehicle, and to arrange for the installation of required equipment. The dealer has information about the availability of equipment which can be ordered for your vehicle.

### END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

#### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC<sup>®</sup> and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

## Customer Information

---

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

### **Description of Other Rights and Limitations.**

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor

its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.



## Customer Information

---

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may

automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components"). SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD

MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

## Customer Information

---

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated

with the use of the DEVICES.

**UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:** If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

**INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:** All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which

may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

# Customer Information

---

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

**SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

# Customer Information

---

- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

# Customer Information

---

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of  
Risk

## Customer Information

---

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather,

financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.

- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

### Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND

WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL

## Customer Information

---

OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

### **Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction**

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

### **Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver**

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF

FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

## Customer Information

---

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a

dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

**(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give



## Customer Information

---

you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.

- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(I) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

### **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

#### **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

# Customer Information

---

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

## 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that
  - i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
  - ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

## Customer Information

---

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

### **4. Disclaimers**

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely

on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

### **5. Limitation of Liability**

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR

# Customer Information

---

OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENV AND OF ALL OF TELENV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an

arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this

Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are

## Customer Information

---

not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### **8.3**

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

### **8.4**

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### **8.5**

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

### **8.6**

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## **9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions**

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

# Customer Information

---

## 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav (“Telenav”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

## 9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

## Terms and Conditions

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in

## Customer Information

---

communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE

THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

# Customer Information

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End- User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

## I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”



## Customer Information

---

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permis-

sion from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided

## Customer Information

---

under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”). Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or

action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of

the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

# Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

## III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”

Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
---------	--

Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique and Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”
---	---

## IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes

## Customer Information

---

of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

### V. Europe Territory

#### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l’Équipement et des Transports.”

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client’s entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client’s paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client’s complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client’s obtaining prior written consent from

Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client’s obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

## Customer Information

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies)	Notice
Austria	“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”
Croatia	
Cyprus,	
Estonia,	
Latvia,	
Lithuania,	“© EuroGeographics”
Moldova,	
Poland,	
Slovenia	
and/or	
Ukraine	
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”
Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”
Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”
Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”
Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may

## Customer Information

---

update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

### VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.pasma.com.au](http://www.pasma.com.au)).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

#### **AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure**

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP

WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

## Customer Information

---

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY,

INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

### **VII. China Territory**

#### ***Personal Use Only***

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view

## Customer Information

---

it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### ***Restrictions***

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer

devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### ***Limited Warranty***

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

### ***Customer Remedies***

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty

is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

### ***No Other Warranty:***

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.



# Customer Information

---

## ***Limited Liability:***

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER

NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## ***Export Control***

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## ***IP Protection***

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## ***Entire Agreement***

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## ***Governing Law.***

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## ***Gracenote® Copyright***

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

## Customer Information

---

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote"™ logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

### ***Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)***

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other

functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

## Customer Information

---

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE

ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

### ***Taiwan Territory***

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

# Customer Information

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

### 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

### 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

## Customer Information

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

### 6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products

and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## EMISSION LAW - UNITED STATES OF AMERICA



**WARNING:** Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat

and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components. Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.



Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

## Customer Information

### Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts:

- Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance.
- Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use.
- The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.
- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.
- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

**Note:** *Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.*

**Note:** *If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

### Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) GVWR.

### EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and

# Customer Information

---

specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

## WARRANTY INFORMATION

The following warranties may apply to your vehicle:

- New vehicle limited warranties.
- Emissions warranties, if applicable. (Note: Fully-electric vehicles are not eligible for emissions warranties.)
- Other warranties, if applicable.

Detailed warranty information specific to your vehicle can be found in the Warranty Guide at [www.owner.lincoln.com](http://www.owner.lincoln.com).

The following California Warranty Statement, required by California regulations, applies to vehicles certified to California emissions standards and registered in a state that requires California emissions warranty. If applicable, additional California Emissions Warranties can be found in the Warranty Guide at [www.owner.lincoln.com](http://www.owner.lincoln.com).

## CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT

### YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS

The California Air Resources Board and Ford Motor Company are pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your (year) vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designated, built and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Ford Motor Company must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel-injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies. Where a warrantable condition exists, Ford Motor Company will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.

### MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY COVERAGE:

(For 1990 and subsequent model passenger cars, light-duty trucks, and medium-duty vehicles.)

- For 3 years or 50,000 miles (whichever occurs first);

1) If your vehicle fails a Smog Check inspection, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Ford Motor Company to ensure that your emission control system **PERFORMANCE WARRANTY**.

## Customer Information

---

2) If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford Motor Company. This is your short-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

- For 7 years or 70,000 miles (whichever occurs first);

1) If an emission-related part listed in this warranty booklet specially noted with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Ford Motor Company. This is your long-term emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

### **OWNER'S WARRANTY RESPONSIBILITIES:**

- As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's manual. Ford Motor Company recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Ford Motor Company cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

- You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Ford or Lincoln dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

- As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Ford Motor Company may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, you should contact Lincoln Concierge at 1-800-521-4140 or the California Air Resource Board at 9528 Telstar Avenue, El Monte, CA 91731.



# Appendices

## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.



**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.

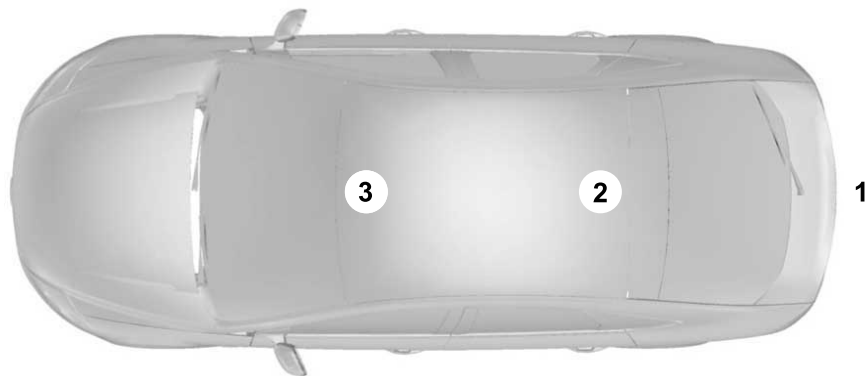
**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

# Appendices

---

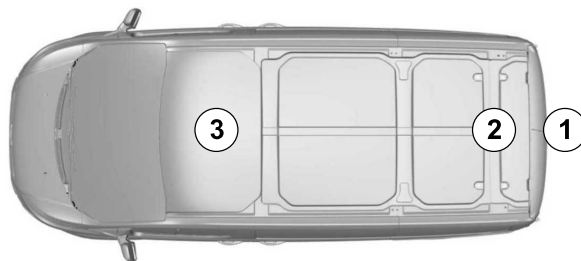
## Car/SUV



# Appendices

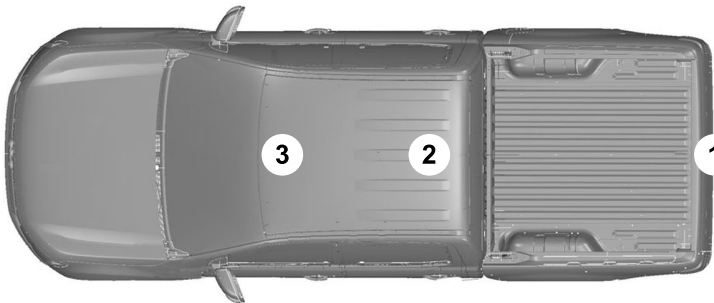
---

## Van



# Appendices

## Truck



Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-87	50	2, 3

# Appendices

---

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3



# Index

## 3

360 Degree Camera.....	261
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	263
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	262
360 Degree Camera Limitations.....	262
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	261
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	263
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off.....	263
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	264

## 4

4WD	
See: Four-Wheel Drive.....	224

## 9

911 Assist.....	70
-----------------	----

## A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	159
About This Publication.....	19

ABS	
See: Brakes.....	232
Accessing Apps.....	512
Accessing Navigation.....	517
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position.....	205
Accessories.....	524
ActiveGlide™.....	286
ActiveGlide™ – Troubleshooting.....	291
ActiveGlide™ Alerts.....	290
ActiveGlide™ Automatic Cancellation.....	290
ActiveGlide™ Indicators.....	291
ActiveGlide™ Limitations.....	288
ActiveGlide™ Precautions.....	287
ActiveGlide™ Requirements.....	288
ActiveGlide™ Settings.....	289
ActiveGlide™ – Troubleshooting.....	291
ActiveGlide™ – Information Messages.....	291
Active Park Assist.....	265
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting.....	267
Active Park Assist Precautions.....	265
Active Park Assist – Troubleshooting.....	267
Active Park Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	267
Active Park Assist – Information Messages.....	267

Adaptive Cruise Control.....	270
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	284
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.....	282
Lane Centering.....	279
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation.....	274
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	278
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	271
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	270
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	284
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....	284
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	130
How Does Adaptive Front Lighting Work.....	130
Switching Adaptive Front Lighting On and Off.....	131
Adjustable Pedals.....	113
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	138
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	427
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....	133
Adjusting the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Mode.....	358

# Index

Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Divider.....	343	Alert Mode.....	302	What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	107
Adjusting the Luggage Compartment Load Floor.....	342	Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity.....	302	What Is Ask on Exit.....	107
Adjusting the Map.....	517	How Does Alert Mode Work.....	302	Appendices.....	625
Changing the Format of the Map.....	517	What Is Alert Mode.....	302	Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	235
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	517	Alexa Built-In.....	503	Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency.....	235
Adjusting the Pedals.....	113	Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	503	App Precautions.....	512
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....	56	Alexa Built-In Settings.....	503	App Requirements.....	512
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	55	AM/FM Radio.....	488	Apps.....	512
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	487	AM/FM Radio Limitations.....	488	Audio System.....	486
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	112	Selecting a Radio Station.....	489	AM/FM Radio.....	488
Adjusting the Volume.....	487	Ambient Lighting.....	133	Audio System – Troubleshooting.....	493
Aid Mode.....	302	Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	133	Digital Radio.....	489
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	302	Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off.....	133	Satellite Radio.....	491
What Is Aid Mode.....	302	Anti-Lock Braking System.....	232	Audio System Precautions.....	486
Airbag Precautions.....	63	Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....	232	Audio System – Troubleshooting.....	493
Airbags.....	61	Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	106	Audio System – Information Messages.....	493
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	65	Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	107	Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror.....	139
Air Conditioning		Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	107	What Is the Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror.....	139
See: Climate Control.....	159	How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work.....	106	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	136
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification.....	474	What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	107	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations.....	136
Alert and Aid Mode.....	303	What Are the Interior Sensors.....	106	What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	136
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	303	What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	106	Auto Hold.....	243
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	303	What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	106	Auto Hold Indicators.....	244
		Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	107		
		Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	107		
		Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	107		



# Index

Autolamps.....	121	Automatic High Beam Control		Automatic Transmission.....	220
Autolamp Settings.....	121	Precautions.....	125	Automatic Return to Park (P).....	223
What Are Autolamps.....	121	Automatic High Beam Control		Automatic Transmission Positions.....	220
Autolock.....	88	Requirements.....	125	Manually Shifting Gears.....	221
Autolock Requirements.....	88	How Does Automatic High Beam Control		Temporary Neutral Mode.....	222
What Is Autolock.....	88	Work.....	124	Automatic Transmission Position	
Automatically Releasing the Electric		Overriding Automatic High Beam		Indicators.....	221
Parking Brake.....	236	Control.....	126	Automatic Transmission Positions.....	220
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	393	Switching Automatic High Beam Control On		Drive (D).....	221
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	393	and Off.....	126	Neutral (N).....	220
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	393	Automatic High Beam Control –		Park (P).....	220
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	393	Troubleshooting.....	127	Reverse (R).....	220
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	327	Automatic High Beam Control – Information		Automatic Transmission	
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On		Messages.....	127	Precautions.....	220
and Off.....	327	Automatic Locking Mode.....	54	Auto Mode.....	161
What Is Automatic Emergency Braking.....	327	Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	55	Auto Mode Indicators.....	161
Automatic Engine Stop.....	204	Engaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	55	Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	161
How Does Automatic Engine Stop		What Is Automatic Locking Mode.....	54	Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	162
Work.....	205	When to Use Automatic Locking Mode.....	54	Auto-Start-Stop.....	208
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	205	Automatic Return to Park (P).....	223	Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	209
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and		Automatic Return to Park (P)		Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	208
Off.....	205	Limitations.....	223	Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	208
What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	204	How Does Automatic Return to Park (P)		Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	209
Automatic High Beam Control.....	124	Work.....	223	Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked	
Automatic High Beam Control		What Is Automatic Return to Park (P).....	223	Questions.....	210
Indicators.....	126	Automatic Transmission Audible		Auto-Start-Stop – Information	
Automatic High Beam Control		Warnings.....	223	Messages.....	209
Limitations.....	126				

# Index

Autounlock.....	88
Autounlock Requirements.....	88
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	88
What Is Autounlock.....	88
Autowipers.....	114
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor.....	115
Autowipers Settings.....	114
What Are Autowipers.....	114

## B

Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery.....	424
Blind Spot Assist.....	304
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	305
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	304
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	304
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	304
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Coverage.....	306
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators.....	307
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	306
How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work.....	306

What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	306
Blind Spot Information System.....	311
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	316
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	313
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	315
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	311
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	311
Blind Spot Information System Requirements.....	312
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	316
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	316
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	313
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	313
Selecting a Trailer.....	315
Setting a Trailer Length.....	314
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....	313
Bluetooth®.....	511

Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	408
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	408
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	409
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	408
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	414
Booster Seats.....	48
Brake Fluid Specification.....	233
Brake Over Accelerator.....	232
Brake Precautions.....	232
Brakes.....	232
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	232
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	233
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	234
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	233
Breaking-In.....	384

## C

Calculating Payload.....	338
Calculating the Load Limit.....	338
Canceling the Set Speed.....	276
Capacities and Specifications.....	467

# Index

Catalytic Converter.....	218	Checking the Seatbelts.....	58	Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	430
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	219	Checking the Tire Pressures.....	449	Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	431
Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	218	Checking the Wiper Blades.....	116	Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	431
Catalytic Converter –		Childminder Mirror.....	136	Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	430
Troubleshooting.....	219	Childminder Mirror Precautions.....	136	Cleaning the Underbody.....	432
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	219	Locating the Childminder Mirror.....	136	Cleaning Wheels.....	431
Center Console.....	200	Children and Airbags.....	65	Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	430
Opening the Center Console.....	200	Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	40	Cleaning the Interior.....	432
Center Display Limitations.....	498	Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor		Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	433
Center Display Overview.....	498	Points.....	40	Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	432
Center Display Precautions.....	498	Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether		Cleaning Fabric Seats and Headliners.....	433
Changing a Flat Tire.....	459	Anchor Points.....	41	Cleaning Leather and Vinyl.....	433
Changing a Road Wheel.....	459	What Are the Child Restraint Anchor		Cleaning Moonroof Tracks.....	434
Changing the 12V Battery.....	424	Points.....	40	Cleaning Plastic.....	432
Changing the Fuel Filter.....	424	Child Restraints.....	41	Cleaning Seatbelts.....	434
Changing the Language.....	151	Child Restraint Position Information.....	41	Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	432
Changing the Measurement Unit.....	151	Child Restraints Recommendation.....	43	Cleaning All MyKeys.....	84
Changing the Radio Station.....	497	Child Safety.....	39	Climate Control.....	159
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	73	Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	40	Auto Mode.....	161
Changing the Temperature Unit.....	151	Child Restraints.....	41	Climate Control Hints.....	162
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	151	Installing Child Restraints.....	44	Closing the Liftgate.....	100
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name		Child Safety Locks.....	51	Closing the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	102
or Password.....	484	Child Safety Precautions.....	39	Closing the Liftgate From Inside Your	
Charging a Device.....	194	Cleaning Products.....	429	Vehicle.....	100
Charging a Wireless Device.....	198	Cleaning the Exterior.....	430	Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your	
Checking MyKey System Status.....	84	Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	432	Vehicle.....	101
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	232	Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless		Closing the Liftgate Using the Remote	
Checking the Coolant.....	418	Steel.....	430	Control.....	101

# Index

Cold Weather Precautions.....	384
Connected Navigation.....	517
Connected Vehicle.....	481
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	482
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	481
Connected Vehicle Data.....	27
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	481
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	481
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	482
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	482
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	511
Connecting a Trailer.....	346
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	348
Hitches.....	345
Connecting a Trailer Precautions.....	345
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	348
Connecting a Trailer – Information Messages.....	348
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	481
Connecting Lincoln Way to the Modem.....	481
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	481
What Is the Modem.....	481

Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	482
Connecting Your Phone.....	505
Contacting Us.....	17
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	471
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	389
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	393
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	390
Post-Crash Alert System.....	392
Post Impact Braking.....	393
Recovery Towing.....	394
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	68
Creating a MyKey.....	83
Creating a Personal Profile.....	515
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	484
Cross Traffic Alert.....	317
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	320
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	319
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	318
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	317
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	320
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	320
Customer Information.....	541
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	545

Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display.....	150
---	-----

## D

Data Privacy.....	24
Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades.....	437
Deploying and Stowing the Power Running Boards.....	111
Digital Radio.....	489
Digital Radio Indicators.....	490
Digital Radio Limitations.....	490
How Does Digital Radio Work.....	490
Switching Digital Radio Reception On and Off.....	490
What Is Digital Radio.....	489
Directing the Flow of Air.....	160
Disposing of Airbags.....	69
Distance Alert.....	327
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance Alert.....	327
What Is Distance Alert.....	327
Distance Indication.....	325
Distance Indication Indicator.....	326
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....	326
What Is Distance Indication.....	325

# Index

Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	89	Drive Modes.....	295	Electric Parking Brake Audible	
Doors and Locks.....	87	Conserve.....	295	Warning.....	236
Autolock.....	88	Deep Conditions.....	295	Electric Parking Brake.....	235
Autounlock.....	88	Excite.....	296	Electric Parking Brake –	
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	89	Normal.....	296	Troubleshooting.....	236
Mislock.....	88	Normal 4A.....	297	Electric Parking Brake –	
Operating the Doors From Inside Your		Slippery.....	297	Troubleshooting.....	236
Vehicle.....	87	Slow Climb.....	297	Electric Parking Brake – Information	
Operating the Doors From Outside Your		Driver Alert.....	330	Messages.....	237
Vehicle.....	87	Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	331	Electric Parking Brake – Warning	
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	89	Driver Alert Limitations.....	331	Lamps.....	236
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked		Driver Alert Precautions.....	330	Electric Power Steering.....	252
Questions.....	90	Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	331	Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	252
Doors and Locks – Information		Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	331	How Does Electric Power Steering	
Messages.....	89	Driving Economically.....	384	Work.....	252
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	89	Driving Hints.....	384	Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	625
Drive Belt Routing.....	428	Driving in Special Conditions.....	385	Electronic Limited-Slip Differential.....	230
Drive Mode Control.....	294	Driving in Special Conditions.....	385	Electronic Limited-Slip Differential –	
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	298	Driving In Sand.....	386	Troubleshooting.....	231
Drive Modes.....	295	Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	385	Electronic Limited-Slip Differential –	
Drive Mode Control –		Driving Through Mud and Water.....	385	Troubleshooting.....	231
Troubleshooting.....	298	Driving on Snow and Ice.....	384	Electronic Limited-Slip Differential –	
Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked		Driving Through Shallow Water.....	386	Information Messages.....	231
Questions.....	299			Emergency Call Limitations.....	71
Drive Mode Control – Information				Emergency Call Requirements.....	70
Messages.....	298			Emergency Call System Data.....	28
Drive Mode Control – Warning Lamps.....	298			Emergency Towing.....	399

## E

Easy Entry and Exit.....	97
--------------------------	----

# Index

Emission Law - United States of America.....	621
Enabling Apps on an Android Device.....	512
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	512
Enabling or Disabling Personal Profiles.....	515
Enabling Remote Start.....	156
End User License Agreement.....	591
Engine Air Filter.....	423
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	423
Engine Block Heater.....	203
Engine Block Heater Precautions.....	203
How Does the Engine Block Heater Work.....	203
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	204
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	144
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification.....	469
Engine Oil.....	417
Adding Engine Oil.....	417
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	417
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification.....	418
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	417
Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	418
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge.....	144
Engine Specifications.....	467
Entering a Parallel Parking Space.....	266

Entering a Perpendicular Parking Space.....	266
Evasive Steering Assist.....	327
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	328
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	328
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	327
Event Data.....	26
Exiting a Parking Space.....	267
Export Unique Options.....	622
Extending the Remote Start Duration.....	157
Exterior Bulbs.....	428
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	428
Exterior Lamps.....	122
Exterior Lamp Indicators.....	123
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	123
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	122
Switching Welcome Lighting On and Off.....	123
Using the Front Fog Lamps.....	123
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	122
Exterior Lighting Control.....	120
Exterior Lighting.....	120
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	130
Autolamps.....	121
Automatic High Beam Control.....	124

Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	127
Exterior Lamps.....	122
Glare Free Lighting.....	127
Glare Free Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	130
Headlamps.....	120
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	121
Exterior Mirrors.....	138
Auto-Dimming Exterior Mirror.....	139

## F

Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	53
Feature Bar.....	499
Federal Highway Administration Regulation.....	591
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	459
Floor Mats.....	387
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....	138
Foot Pedals	
See: Adjusting the Pedals.....	113
Ford Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	520
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	520
Four-Wheel Drive.....	224
Four-Wheel Drive Modes.....	226

# Index

Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	227
Four-Wheel Drive Indicators.....	227
Four-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	225
Four-Wheel Drive Modes.....	226
Four-Wheel Drive Auto.....	227
Four-Wheel Drive High.....	227
Four-Wheel Drive Low.....	227
Two-Wheel Drive High.....	226
Four-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	224
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	227
Four-Wheel Drive – Information Messages.....	228
Four-Wheel Drive – Warning Lamps.....	227
Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	478
Front Exterior.....	35
Front Parking Aid.....	257
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	258
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	257
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	257
What Is the Front Parking Aid.....	257
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	65
Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators.....	68
Front Passenger Sensing System Precautions.....	67

How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work.....	65
What Is the Front Passenger Sensing System.....	65
Front Seat Precautions.....	167
Front Seats.....	167
Heated Seats.....	173
Massage Seats.....	172
Power Seats.....	168
Ventilated Seats.....	174
Fuel and Refueling.....	211
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	217
Fuel Quality.....	212
Refueling.....	214
Running Out of Fuel.....	213
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	211
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	217
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	217
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	217
Fuel Gauge.....	143
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	143
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	143
What Is Distance to Empty.....	144
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	143
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	143

Fuel Quality.....	212
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	212
Fuel Tank Capacity.....	216
Fuse Precautions.....	401
Fuses.....	401
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	408
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	413
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	401
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	413
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	413

## G

Garage Door Opener Additional Assistance.....	192
Garage Door Opener.....	188
Garage Door Opener Introduction.....	188
Garage Door Opener Precautions and Frequencies.....	188
General Maintenance Information.....	529
Glare Free Lighting.....	127
Glare Free Lighting Indicators.....	129
Glare Free Lighting Limitations.....	129
Glare Free Lighting Precautions.....	128
Glare Free Lighting Requirements.....	128
How Does Glare Free Lighting Work.....	127
Overriding Glare Free Lighting.....	129

# Index

Switching Glare Free Lighting On and Off.....	129
Glare Free Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	130
Glare Free Lighting – Information Messages.....	130
Global Opening.....	134
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	135
Using Global Opening.....	135
What Is Global Opening.....	134
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	443
Glove Compartment.....	200
Opening the Glove Compartment.....	200

## H

Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	427
Headlamps.....	120
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	120
Headlamp Indicators.....	120
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	120
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	120
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	121
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	121

Head Up Display.....	152
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....	155
Head Up Display Indicators.....	154
Head Up Display Settings.....	152
Head Up Display – Troubleshooting.....	155
Head Up Display – Information Messages.....	155
Heated Seats.....	173
Heated Seat Precautions.....	173
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	173
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	159
Hill Descent Control.....	250
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....	251
Hill Descent Control Indicator.....	251
Hill Descent Control Precautions.....	250
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....	251
Hill Descent Control – Information Messages.....	251
Hill Start Assist.....	242
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	242
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	242
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	242
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	242

Hitches.....	345
Hooking Up a Trailer Using a Weight-Distributing Hitch.....	346
Installing a Hitch.....	345
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	414
Horn.....	112
How Does 911 Assist Work.....	70
How Does ActiveGlide™ Work.....	286
How Does Active Park Assist Work.....	265
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	270
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	243
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	311
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	317
How Does Drive Mode Control Work.....	294
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	330
How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work.....	97
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work.....	224
How Does Hill Descent Control Work.....	250
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	242
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	321
How Does Reverse Braking Assist Work.....	238



# Index

How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work.....	332
How Does Stability Control Work.....	247
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	261
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	300
How Does the Personal Safety System Work.....	60
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	184
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work.....	62
How Does Traction Control Work.....	245
How Does Trailer Backup Assistance Work.....	362
How Does Trailer Reverse Guidance Work.....	375
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....	361
How Do Personal Profiles Work.....	515
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	61
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	61
<b>I</b>	
Identifying Fuse Types.....	413
Identifying the Audio Unit.....	486
Identifying the Climate Control Unit.....	159
Identifying the Rear Passenger Audio Controls.....	497
Identifying the Rear Passenger Climate Control Unit.....	164
Inflating the Tires.....	449
Information On Demand Screen.....	500
Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	438
Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	450
Inspecting the Tire for Wear.....	449
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems.....	451
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net.....	341
Installing Child Restraints.....	44
Combining the Seatbelt and Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Restraints.....	47
Installing a Child Restraint in a Center Seat.....	47
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children.....	46
Using Seatbelts.....	44
Using Tether Straps.....	47
Instrument Cluster Display.....	148
Trip Computer.....	149
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu.....	148
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	146
Instrument Cluster.....	142
Fuel Gauge.....	143
Instrument Cluster Overview.....	142
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	144
Instrument Panel.....	31
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	356
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting.....	359
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Precautions.....	356
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting.....	359
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Frequently Asked Questions.....	360
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Information Messages.....	359
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.....	282
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance.....	283
How Does Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	282
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Alerts.....	283
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	283
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	282
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	282
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Requirements.....	282

# Index

Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off.....	283
Interior Air Quality.....	166
Interior Bulbs.....	428
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	428
Interior Lamp Function.....	133
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	133
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	133
Interior Lighting.....	132
Ambient Lighting.....	133
Interior Lamp Function.....	133
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	133
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	133
Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	133
Interior Mirror.....	136
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	136
Childminder Mirror.....	136
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	136
Introduction.....	19

## J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	390
Jump Starting Precautions.....	390
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	391
Preparing the Vehicle.....	391

## K

Keyless Entry.....	91
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	92
Keyless Entry Keypad.....	93
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	96
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations.....	93
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code.....	93
Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes.....	94
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	96
Keyless Entry Keypad – Frequently Asked Questions.....	96
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	91
Keyless Entry Settings.....	91
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	92
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	92
Keys and Remote Controls.....	72
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	77
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	77
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	77

## L

Lane Centering.....	279
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	279
Lane Centering Alerts.....	280
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	281
Lane Centering Indicators.....	282
Lane Centering Limitations.....	280
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	281
Lane Centering Precautions.....	279
Lane Centering Requirements.....	279
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	280
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	303
Lane Keeping System.....	300
Aid Mode.....	302
Alert and Aid Mode.....	303
Alert Mode.....	302
Blind Spot Assist.....	304
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	306
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	308
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	301
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	300
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	308
Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	309

# Index

Lane Keeping System – Information	
Messages.....	308
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft.....	351
Liftgate.....	98
Closing the Liftgate.....	100
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	104
Opening the Liftgate.....	98
Liftgate Obstacle Detection.....	103
Liftgate Precautions.....	98
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	104
Liftgate – Frequently Asked Questions.....	105
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	104
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	104
Lincoln Personal Assistant.....	501
Lincoln Personal Assistant – Frequently Asked Questions.....	501
Lincoln Personal Assistant Settings.....	501
Using Lincoln Personal Assistant.....	501
Lincoln Protect.....	526
Linking or Unlinking a Personal Profile to a Remote Control.....	516
Live Traffic.....	517
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....	517
What Is Live Traffic.....	517
Load Carrying.....	336
Roof Rack.....	340
Load Carrying Precautions.....	336

Loading Your Trailer.....	350
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	262
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	312
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	232
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	318
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	212
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	93
Locating the Memory Function Buttons.....	186
Locating the Power Outlets.....	195
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors.....	324
Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels.....	337
Locating the Tire label.....	437
Locating the USB Ports.....	193
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	198
Locating Your Vehicle.....	73
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	135
Luggage Compartment.....	341
Luggage Compartment Precautions.....	341

## M

Maintenance.....	414
Engine Air Filter.....	423
Engine Oil.....	417
Exterior Bulbs.....	428
Interior Bulbs.....	428
Maintenance Precautions.....	414
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	507
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	235
Manually Shifting Gears.....	221
Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters.....	221
Manual Seats.....	175
Accessing the Third Row Seats.....	178
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	176
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	177
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	177
Head Restraint Components.....	175
Installing the Head Restraint.....	176
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	176
Removing the Head Restraint.....	176
Unfolding the Seats.....	178
Massage Seats.....	172
Adjusting the Massage Seat Settings.....	172
Massage Seat Limitations.....	172

# Index

Switching the Massage Seats On and Off.....	182
Memory Function.....	186
Memory Function Precautions.....	186
Mislock.....	88
Mislock Limitations.....	88
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	88
What Is Mislock.....	88
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	591
Mobile Device Data.....	27
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	141
Overriding Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	141
What Is Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	141
Moonroof.....	140
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	141
Motorcraft Parts.....	468
Muting the Audio.....	487
MyKey Settings.....	82
Configurable MyKey Settings.....	82
Non-Configurable MyKey Settings.....	82
MyKey – Troubleshooting.....	85
MyKey – Frequently Asked Questions.....	86
MyKey – Information Messages.....	85
MyKey™.....	82
MyKey Settings.....	82
MyKey – Troubleshooting.....	85

## N

Navigation Map Updates.....	517
Navigation.....	517
Adjusting the Map.....	517
Live Traffic.....	517
Route Guidance.....	519
Setting a Destination.....	518
Waypoints.....	518
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	533

## O

Opening and Closing the Hood.....	414
Opening and Closing the Liftgate Window.....	103
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	140
Opening and Closing the Sunshade.....	140
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	134
Opening the Liftgate.....	98
Opening the Hands-Free Liftgate.....	99
Opening the Liftgate From Inside Your Vehicle.....	98
Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	98
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	99

Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	87
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	87
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	87
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	87
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	87
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	87
Ordering a Canadian French Owner's Manual.....	543
OTA	
See: Software Update Settings.....	520
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	520
Overhead Storage.....	200
Opening the Overhead Storage Compartment.....	200
Overriding Reverse Braking Assist.....	239
Overriding the Set Speed.....	278
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	520
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	520
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	520
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	520

# Index

## P

Parking Aid Indicators.....	259	Phone.....	505	Power Running Boards.....	110
Parking Aid Precautions.....	255	Phone Precautions.....	505	Power Running Boards –	
Parking Aids.....	255	Playing and Pausing the Audio		Troubleshooting.....	111
Front Parking Aid.....	257	Source.....	497	Power Running Boards –	
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	259	Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	511	Troubleshooting.....	111
Rear Parking Aid.....	256	Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	193	Power Running Boards – Frequently Asked	
Side Parking Aid.....	258	Playing or Pausing the Audio		Questions.....	111
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	259	Source.....	486	Power Seats.....	168
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	259	Post-Crash Alert System.....	392	Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	168
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	106	How Does the Post-Crash Alert System		Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	172
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System		Work.....	392	Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	171
Work.....	106	Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	392	Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	170
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	106	Switching the Post-Crash Alert System		Adjusting the Seat Height.....	172
Perchlorate.....	590	Off.....	393	Folding the Seat Backrest.....	180
Performing a System Reset.....	523	What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	392	Head Restraint Components.....	168
Personalized Settings.....	151	Post Impact Braking.....	393	Installing the Head Restraint.....	169
Personal Profiles.....	515	How Does Post Impact Braking Work.....	393	Moving the Seat Backward and	
Personal Safety System Components.....	60	Overriding Post Impact Braking.....	393	Forward.....	170
Personal Safety System™.....	60	Post Impact Braking Indicators.....	393	Removing the Head Restraint.....	169
Phone as a Key Limitations.....	78	Post Impact Braking Limitations.....	393	Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	181
Phone as a Key.....	78	Power Outlet Indicators.....	197	Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	322
Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting.....	80	Power Outlet Limitations.....	196	Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	321
Phone as a Key – Troubleshooting.....	80	Power Outlet.....	195	Pre-Collision Assist.....	321
Phone as a Key – Frequently Asked		Power Outlet Precautions.....	195	Automatic Emergency Braking.....	327
Questions.....	80	Power Running Board Precautions.....	110	Distance Alert.....	327
Phone Menu.....	505	Power Running Board Settings.....	110	Distance Indication.....	325
				Evasive Steering Assist.....	327
				Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	328

# Index

Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	328
Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	329
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	328
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....	328
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....	435
Programming a MyKey.....	84
Programming the Garage Door Opener.....	189
Programming the Remote Control.....	75
Programming Your Phone.....	78
Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front Passenger Seats.....	64
Puncture See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	459
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	201

## R

Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	545
Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	545
Body Control Module.....	553
Cruise Control Module.....	556
Keys and Remote Controls.....	561
Radio Transceiver Module.....	567

SYNC.....	570
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors.....	576
Wireless Accessory Charging Module.....	582
Rear Auto Mode.....	165
Switching Rear Auto Mode On and Off.....	165
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	479
Rear Exterior.....	37
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	185
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....	185
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	184
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	184
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	184
Rear Parking Aid.....	256
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....	256
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	257
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	256
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	256
Rear Passenger Audio Controls.....	497
Rear Passenger Climate Control Indicators.....	165
Rear Passenger Climate Control.....	164
Rear Auto Mode.....	165

Rear Seats.....	175
Heated Seats.....	182
Manual Seats.....	175
Massage Seats.....	182
Power Seats.....	179
Ventilated Seats.....	183
Rebooting the Center Display.....	500
Recalling a Preset Position.....	186
Recovery Towing.....	394
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	394
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - 4x2.....	399
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - 4x4.....	397
Refueling.....	214
Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door.....	216
Refueling System Overview.....	214
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	214
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	236
Remote Control Limitations.....	72
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle.....	156
Remote Start Limitations.....	156
Remote Start Precautions.....	156
Remote Start Remote Control Indicators.....	157

# Index

Remote Start.....	156	Reverse Braking Assist – Information		Selecting a Channel.....	491
Remote Start Settings.....	157	Messages.....	240	What Is Satellite Radio.....	491
Removing the Key Blade.....	73	Reverse Wipe.....	115	Saving a Preset Position.....	186
Removing Your Vehicle From		Reverse Wipe Settings.....	115	Scheduled Maintenance.....	529
Storage.....	436	What Is Reverse Wipe.....	115	Seatbelt Extensions.....	58
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	434	Roadside Assistance.....	389	Seatbelt Precautions.....	52
Replacement Parts		Rollover Warning.....	541	Seatbelt Reminder.....	56
Recommendation.....	590	Roof Rack.....	340	How Does the Seatbelt Reminder Work.....	56
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote		Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	340	Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	57
Control.....	75	Roof Rack Precautions.....	340	Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	56
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	166	Route Guidance.....	519	Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and	
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	116	Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	519	Off.....	57
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	117	Canceling Route Guidance.....	519	Seatbelts.....	52
Reporting Safety Defects in Canada.....	544	Repeating an Instruction.....	519	Automatic Locking Mode.....	54
Reporting Safety Defects in the United		Running-In		Seatbelt Reminder.....	56
States.....	543	See: Breaking-In.....	384	Sensitive Locking Mode.....	54
Resetting the Stopping Position.....	112	Running Out of Fuel.....	213	Security.....	106
Restarting the Engine.....	208	Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel		Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	106
Resuming the Set Speed.....	276	Container.....	213	Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	107
Reverse Braking Assist Indicators.....	239	Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	213	Passive Anti-Theft System.....	106
Reverse Braking Assist Precautions.....	238			Security – Troubleshooting.....	108
Reverse Braking Assist.....	238			Security – Troubleshooting.....	108
Reverse Braking Assist –				Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	109
Troubleshooting.....	240			Security – Information Messages.....	108
Reverse Braking Assist –		S		Selecting a Drive Mode.....	295
Troubleshooting.....	240	Satellite Radio.....	491	Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode.....	226
Reverse Braking Assist – Frequently Asked		Locating the Satellite Radio Identification		Selecting the Audio Source.....	486
Questions.....	241	Number.....	491		
		Satellite Radio Limitations.....	491		
		Satellite Radio Settings.....	492		

# Index

Sending and Receiving a Text Message.....	509	Setting the Hill Descent Speed.....	251	Software Update Settings.....	520
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	54	Setting the Liftgate Opening Height.....	100	Software Update	
How Does Sensitive Locking Mode Work.....	54	Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Tolerance.....	333	See: Software Update Settings.....	520
What is Sensitive Locking Mode.....	54	Setting the Speed Sign Recognition Speed Warning.....	333	See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	520
Service Data.....	25	Setting the Temperature.....	160	Sounding the Panic Alarm.....	73
Setting a Destination.....	518	Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance for a Conventional Trailer.....	363	Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....	537
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	518	Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid Sticker.....	364	Speedometer.....	143
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	518	Calibrating the System.....	365	Speed Sign Recognition Indicators.....	333
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	518	Configuring the Trailer.....	363	Speed Sign Recognition Limitations.....	332
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	518	Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for a Conventional Trailer.....	375	Speed Sign Recognition Precautions.....	332
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	518	Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid Sticker.....	376	Speed Sign Recognition.....	332
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	518	Calibrating the System.....	377	Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....	334
Setting a Memory Preset.....	487	Configuring the Trailer.....	375	Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....	334
Settings Data.....	26	Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	221	Speed Sign Recognition – Frequently Asked Questions.....	335
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap.....	275	Side Parking Aid.....	258	Speed Sign Recognition – Information Messages.....	334
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed.....	274	Locating the Side Parking Aid Sensors.....	259	Stability Control Indicator.....	249
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	160	Side Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	259	Stability Control.....	247
Setting the Clock and Date.....	488	Side Parking Aid Limitations.....	258	Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions.....	201
		What is the Side Parking Aid.....	258	Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	201
		Signing Into Your Account.....	503	Automatic Engine Stop.....	204
		Sitting in the Correct Position.....	167	Engine Block Heater.....	203
		Software Update Indicators.....	521		



# Index

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	206	Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	204	Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	318
Starting the Engine.....	202	Stopping the Liftgate Movement.....	103	Switching Defrost On and Off.....	159
Stopping the Engine.....	204	Storage.....	200	Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	331
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	206	Center Console.....	200	Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off.....	97
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions.....	207	Glove Compartment.....	200	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	278
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages.....	206	Overhead Storage.....	200	Switching Hill Descent Control On and Off.....	250
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps.....	206	Storing Your Vehicle.....	435	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	160
Starting the Engine.....	202	Sunroof		Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	159
Restarting the Engine After Stopping it.....	202	See: Moonroof.....	140	Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	256
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	202	Switching ActiveGlide™ On and Off.....	289	Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off.....	323
Status Bar.....	498	Switching Active Park Assist On and Off.....	265	Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off.....	185
Steering.....	252	Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	273	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	159
Electric Power Steering.....	252	Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	159	Switching Repeat Mode On and Off.....	487
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	252	Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	132	Switching Reverse Braking Assist On and Off.....	239
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	252	Switching Android Auto On and Off.....	513	Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off.....	487
Steering – Frequently Asked Questions.....	254	Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	513	Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	248
Steering – Information Messages.....	253	Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	243		
Steering – Warning Indicators.....	252	Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	208		
Steering Wheel.....	29	Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	312		
Stopping the Engine.....	208	Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	159		
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	204				

# Index

Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	510
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	486
Switching the Display On and Off.....	489
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	132
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	390
Switching the Head Up Display On and Off.....	152
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	160
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	112
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	301
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	301
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	132
Switching the Rear Passenger Audio Controls On and Off.....	497
Switching the Rear Passenger Climate Controls On and Off.....	164
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	115

Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	245
Switching Trailer Backup Assistance On and Off.....	366
Switching Trailer Reverse Guidance On and Off.....	378
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off.....	361
Symbols Glossary.....	21
Symbols Used on Your Vehicle.....	21
System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	520
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	520

## T

Tachometer.....	143
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	467
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	222
Entering Temporary Neutral Mode.....	222
Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode.....	222
How Does Temporary Neutral Mode Work.....	222
Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations.....	222
What Is Temporary Neutral Mode.....	222

The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program - United States of America.....	541
The Mediation and Arbitration Program - Canada.....	542
Tire Care.....	449
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	455
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview.....	453
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	454
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	453
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	455
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	455
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	457
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	455
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	444
Tire Rotation.....	451
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	350
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	349
Towing a Trailer.....	349
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	354
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	352

# Index

Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	354
Towing a Trailer – Information	
Messages.....	354
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	352
Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer	
Weight for Your Vehicle.....	353
Recommended Towing Weights.....	352
What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer	
Weight.....	353
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	397
Towing Your Vehicle.....	397
Towing Your Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	400
Towing Your Vehicle –	
Troubleshooting.....	400
Towing Your Vehicle – Information	
Messages.....	400
Traction Control Indicator.....	245
Traction Control.....	245
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	246
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	246
Traction Control – Information	
Messages.....	246
Trailer Backup Assistance	
Precautions.....	362
Trailer Backup Assistance.....	362
Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance for	
a Conventional Trailer.....	363

Trailer Backup Assistance –	
Troubleshooting.....	369
Trailer Backup Assistance –	
Troubleshooting.....	369
Trailer Backup Assistance – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	372
Trailer Backup Assistance – Information	
Messages.....	369
Trailer Brake Precautions.....	349
Trailer Reverse Guidance	
Precautions.....	375
Trailer Reverse Guidance.....	375
Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for a	
Conventional Trailer.....	375
Trailer Reverse Guidance –	
Troubleshooting.....	380
Trailer Reverse Guidance –	
Troubleshooting.....	380
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	382
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Information	
Messages.....	380
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	361
Trailer Sway Control.....	361
Trailer Towing Hints.....	350
Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and	
Specification.....	477

Transmission Fluid Temperature	
Gauge.....	144
Transporting the Vehicle.....	395
Trip Computer.....	149
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	149
Resetting the Individual Trip Values.....	150

## U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	401
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	401
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse	
Box.....	402
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	401
Under Hood Overview.....	415
USB Ports.....	193
Using Alexa Built-In.....	503
Using Auto Hold.....	243
Using Keyless Entry.....	91
Using MyKey With Remote Start	
Systems.....	84
Using Snow Chains.....	446
Using the Backup Start Passcode.....	79
Using the Instrument Cluster Display	
Controls.....	148
Using the Integrated Trailer Brake	
Controller.....	356
Using the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	95

# Index

Using the Remote Control.....	72
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Controller.....	366
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Views.....	367
Using the Valet Mode.....	79
Using This Publication.....	20
Using Trailer Reverse Guidance Views.....	378
<b>V</b>	
Vehicle Care.....	429
Cleaning the Exterior.....	430
Cleaning the Interior.....	432
Vehicle Identification Number.....	480
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	480
Vehicle Identification Number Overview.....	480
Vehicle Identification.....	480
Vehicle Identification Number.....	480
Vehicle Interior.....	33
Vehicle Software Updates.....	520
Vehicle System Reset.....	523

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	485
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....	485
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	484
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	485
Ventilated Seats.....	174
Switching the Ventilated Seats On and Off.....	174
Ventilated Seat Precautions.....	174
Ventilation See: Climate Control.....	159
Venting the Moonroof.....	141
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	455
Visual Search.....	29
Voice Interaction.....	501
Lincoln Personal Assistant.....	501
<b>W</b>	
Warranty Information.....	623
Washer Fluid Specification.....	475
Washers.....	117
Adding Washer Fluid.....	118
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	118
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	118

Using the Windshield Washer.....	118
Washer Fluid Specification.....	118
Washer Precautions.....	117
Washers See: Wipers and Washers.....	114
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	434
Waypoints.....	518
Adding a Waypoint.....	518
Editing Waypoints.....	519
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	146
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	144
What Is 911 Assist.....	70
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	481
What Is ActiveGlide™.....	286
What Is Active Park Assist.....	265
What is Alexa Built-In.....	503
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	208
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	311
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	317
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	294
What Is Driver Alert.....	330
What Is Hill Descent Control.....	250
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	242
What Is Keyless Entry.....	91
What Is Lincoln Protect.....	526

# Index

What Is MyKey.....	82	What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	453	Wipers and Washers.....	114
What Is Phone as a Key.....	78	What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	198	Autowipers.....	114
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	321	What Is Traction Control.....	245	Reverse Wipe.....	115
What Is Remote Start.....	156	What Is Trailer Backup Assistance.....	362	Washers.....	117
What Is Reverse Braking Assist.....	238	What Is Trailer Reverse Guidance.....	375	Wipers.....	114
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....	332	Wheel and Tire Information.....	437	Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	119
What Is the 360 Degree Camera.....	261	Wheel Nuts.....	465	Wipers.....	114
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	166	Wi Fi		Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	114
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	218	See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	484	Wiper Precautions.....	114
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	235	See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	482	Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	198
What Is the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential.....	230	See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	484	Wireless Accessory Charger.....	198
What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating.....	337	See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	484		
What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating.....	337	Window Bounce-Back.....	135		
What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.....	337	Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	135		
What Is the Head Up Display.....	152	What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	135		
What Is the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	356	Windows.....	134		
What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	93	Global Opening.....	134		
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	300	Window Bounce-Back.....	135		
What Is the Memory Function.....	186	Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	119		
What Is the Personal Safety System.....	60	Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	119		
What Is the Power Outlet.....	195	Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	119		
What Is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	184				





